

Dell™ PowerVault™ TL2000 Tape Library and TL4000
Tape Library

User's Guide

Dell™ PowerVault™ TL2000 Tape Library and TL4000
Tape Library

User's Guide

Information in this document is subject to change without notice.

© 2008 Dell Inc. All rights reserved.

Reproduction in any manner whatsoever without the written permission of Dell Inc. is strictly forbidden.
Trademarks used in this text: Dell, the DELL logo and PowerVault are trademarks of Dell Inc.

Other trademarks and trade names may be used in this document to refer to either the entities claiming the marks and names or their products. Dell Inc. disclaims any proprietary interest in trademarks and trade names other than its own.

Dell PowerVault TL2000/TL4000

Read this First

Minimum Firmware Levels for Common Library Features

Table 1. Minimum Firmware Levels for common Library features

Feature	Minimum Firmware Level(s) Required
Dedicated Cleaning Slot removal	Library firmware level must be greater than 3.90.
Encryption	Library firmware level must be 5.80 or greater. LTO4 Drive firmware level must be 77BE or greater.
Key Path Diagnostics	Library firmware level must be greater than 6.3, if feature is available.
Path Failover	LTO 4 Tape Drives: No minimum level of firmware is required. Library firmware must be greater than 5.80.
IPv6 Support	Library firmware level: 4.50
LT04 Drive Support	Library firmware level: 3.90

Contacting Dell

For customers in the United States, call 800-WWW-DELL (800-999-3355).

Note: If you do not have an active Internet connection, you can find contact information on your purchase invoice, packing slip, bill, or Dell product catalog.

Dell provides several online and telephone-based support and service options. Availability varies by country and product, and some services may not be available in your area. To contact Dell for sales, technical support, or customer service issues:

1. Visit <http://support.dell.com>.
2. Verify your country or region in the **Choose A Country/Region** drop-down menu at the bottom of the page.
3. Click **Contact Us** on the left side of the page.
4. Select the appropriate service or support link based on your need.
5. Choose the method of contacting Dell that is convenient for you.

Contents

Read this First. iii

Minimum Firmware Levels for Common Library	
Features	iii
Contacting Dell	iii

Figures vii

Tables ix

Safety and Environmental Notices . . . xi

Danger Notice	xi
Caution Notice	xi
Laser Safety and Compliance	xii
Class I Laser Product	xii
Performing the Safety Inspection Procedure	xii
Rack Safety	xiii

Preface xv

Related Publications	xv
--------------------------------	----

Chapter 1. Product Description 1-1

Front Panel	1-1
Rear Panel	1-3
Internal View of Library	1-5
Bar Code Reader	1-6
Encryption	1-6
Supported Internet Protocols	1-8
SNMP Messaging	1-8
Maximum Library Storage Capacity and Data	
Transfer Rate	1-8
Ultrium Tape Drives	1-9
Speed Matching	1-10
Channel Calibration	1-10
Power Management	1-11
Media	1-11
Library Specifications	1-11
Product Environment	1-13
Supported Device Drivers	1-13

Chapter 2. User Interfaces 2-1

Operator Control Panel	2-1
Operator Control Panel Philosophy	2-1
Power-ON Display.	2-2
Note about the Front Panel LEDs	2-2
Input Modes.	2-3
Power ON/OFF	2-4
Web User Interface.	2-4
Login	2-5
System Status	2-6
Web User Interface Help Pages	2-7
Logging out of the Web User Interface	2-7

Chapter 3. Installation Planning. . . . 3-1

Determining the Number of Logical Libraries.	3-1
--	-----

Basic Guidelines	3-1
Library Sharing.	3-1
Using Multiple Logical Libraries for Library	
Sharing	3-2
Using Multiple Control Paths	3-2
Using Multiple Control Paths for Path Failover	3-2
Library Partitioning and Element Addressing	3-3
Logical Unit Number (LUN) Scanning	3-6
Host Interfaces	3-6
SCSI Interface	3-6
SAS Interface	3-8
Fibre Channel Interface	3-8

Chapter 4. Installation and Configuration 4-1

Installing Your Library	4-1
Using the Library Configuration Form	4-1
Choosing a Location	4-1
Unpacking the Library	4-2
Verifying the Shipment	4-2
Installing the Library Foot Pads (for Desktop	
Installation ONLY).	4-3
Removing and Storing the Shipping Lock	4-4
Rackmounting the Library (for Rack Installation	
ONLY).	4-6
Connecting the Host Interface Cable	4-12
Connecting a Power Cord	4-13
Configuring Your Library	4-14
Choosing Your Configuration Method	4-14
Using Factory Defaults as Your Configuration	4-15
Configuring Your Library using the Web User	
Interface.	4-15
Preparing the Host	4-29
Verifying the Connection	4-29
Cartridge Magazines.	4-30
Populating the Library with Data Cartridges	4-33
Inserting the Cleaning Cartridge.	4-34

Chapter 5. Operations 5-1

Operator Control Panel Navigation	5-9
Operator Control Panel Menu Tree	5-10
Monitor Menu	5-11
Control Menu	5-16
Configure Menu	5-18
Service Menu	5-26
Web User Interface Menus.	5-29
Monitor Library Menu	5-30
Configure Library Menu	5-38
Manage Library Menu	5-49
Service Library Menu	5-50
Import and Export Media during Normal Library	
Operation	5-55
Configuring I/O Stations and Reserving Slots	5-57

Chapter 6. Using Ultrium Media. . . . 6-1

Data Cartridges	6-1
Cartridge Compatibility	6-2
WORM (Write Once, Read Many).	6-2
WORM Media	6-3
Data Security on WORM Media	6-3
WORM Media Errors	6-3
Cleaning Cartridge.	6-3
Bar Code Label	6-4
Guidelines for Using Bar Code Labels	6-5
Write-Protect Switch	6-5
Handling the Cartridges	6-6
Provide Training	6-6
Ensure Proper Packaging	6-6
Provide Proper Acclimation and Environmental Conditions	6-7
Perform a Thorough Inspection	6-7
Handle the Cartridge Carefully	6-8
Environmental and Shipping Specifications for Tape Cartridges	6-8

Chapter 7. Troubleshooting 7-1

Installation Problems	7-1
Maintenance Problems	7-2
Library Recovery Problem Determination	7-7
Procedures for Isolating CRU Problems.	7-8
Isolating a Power Supply Problem	7-8
Isolating Drive Sled Problems.	7-10
Isolating a Library Controller Card vs. Accessor Enclosure Problem	7-11
Isolating Web User Interface Problems.	7-11
Isolating Accessor Scanner Problems	7-12
Isolating Host Attachment Interface Problems	7-12
Identifying a Suspect Cartridge	7-12

Chapter 8. Error Codes 8-1

Chapter 9. Service Procedures 9-1

Removing Cartridges from Magazine Slots.	9-1
Releasing the Magazines Manually	9-1
Using the ITDT Firmware Update, Dump Retrieval and Drive Test Tool	9-5

Chapter 10. Check, Adjust, Remove, and Replace 10-1

Tools Required.	10-1
Electrostatic Discharge	10-1
Relocating Your Library.	10-1
Replacing a Tape Drive Sled	10-3
Replacing a Power Supply.	10-7
Replacing a Library Controller Card	10-8
Replacing Cartridge Magazines.	10-10
Replacing the Library Enclosure	10-10

Preparing the Defective Library for Replacement	10-10
Unpacking and Preparing the Replacement Library Enclosure	10-12
Swapping Library Controller Cards	10-15
Installing Your Drive(s) in the Replacement Library Enclosure	10-17
Swapping Cartridge Magazines.	10-19
Swapping Power Supplies	10-22
Installing the Replacement Library Enclosure	10-23
Completing the Installation of the Replacement Library Enclosure.	10-25
Returning the Defective Library	10-25

Appendix A. SCSI Element Types and Addresses. A-1

2U Library I/O Slot, Storage Slots and Drive Slot Element Addresses and Physical Locations	A-1
4U Library I/O Slots, Storage Slots, and Drive Slots Element Addresses and Physical Locations	A-2
Library Partitioning and Element Addressing	A-2

Appendix B. TapeAlert Flags B-1

TapeAlert Flags Supported by the Library	B-1
TapeAlert Flags Supported by the Drive	B-3

Appendix C. Sense Data. C-1

Library Sense Data	C-1
Drive Sense Data	C-6

Appendix D. Enabling LUN Support in Linux D-1

Red Hat Enterprise Linux	D-2
Enabling LUN Support in Netware	D-2

Appendix E. Notes on IPv6 Compatibility with Windows 2003/XP and 2008/Vista E-1

Notes on IPv6 Compatibility with Linux	E-2
--	-----

Appendix F. Library Configuration Form F-1

Notices G-1

Trademarks	G-1
----------------------	-----

Glossary H-1

Index X-1

Figures

1-1.	Front panel of a 2U library	1-1	4-21.	The 4U library Configure Library: Logical Libraries page	4-21
1-2.	Front panel of a 4U library	1-2	4-22.	The Configure Library: Path Failover Feature Activation screen.	4-21
1-3.	Rear panel of a 2U library with a SCSI drive	1-3	4-23.	Feature Key verification screen.	4-21
1-4.	Rear panel of a 4U library with Full height Fibre Channel drive and Half height SCSI and SAS drives	1-4	4-24.	Feature Activation Key screen	4-22
1-5.	Rear panel of a 2U library with a full height dual port SAS drive.	1-4	4-25.	Configure Library: Encryption Activation screen	4-22
1-6.	Internal view of the library	1-5	4-26.	The Configure Library: Drive screen	4-23
1-7.	Library drive sled without ESD springs (SCSI sled shown)	1-10	4-27.	Configure Library: Network page	4-24
1-8.	Library drive sled with ESD springs [1] (SAS sled shown)	1-10	4-28.	Warning screen	4-24
2-1.	Power-ON Screens	2-2	4-29.	The Configure Library: User Access screen	4-26
2-2.	Web User Interface login page	2-6	4-30.	The Configure Library: Date and Time screen	4-27
2-3.	2U library System Status screen	2-6	4-31.	The Configure Library: Logs and Traces screen	4-27
2-4.	4U library System Status screen	2-6	4-32.	The Configure Library: Event Notification screen	4-28
2-5.	4U library System Status screen showing a power supply failure	2-7	4-33.	2U library left magazine	4-30
3-1.	Configuration of a One Partition System	3-4	4-34.	2U library right magazine	4-30
3-2.	Configuration of a Two Partition System	3-4	4-35.	2U library I/O Station in the left magazine	4-31
3-3.	Configuration of a Three Partition System	3-4	4-36.	4U library left magazines.	4-31
3-4.	Configuration of a Four Partition System	3-5	4-37.	4U library right magazines	4-32
3-5.	Examples of SCSI Element Addressing	3-5	4-38.	4U library I/O Station in the lower left magazine	4-32
4-1.	Removing the plastic protective sheets from the library	4-2	4-39.	Finger Holes on back side of 4U library I/O Station	4-33
4-2.	Installing foot pads on the bottom of the library enclosure	4-4	5-1.	2U Library Control Keys	5-9
4-3.	Shipping lock and label	4-5	5-2.	4U Library Control Keys	5-9
4-4.	Removing the Shipping lock and label	4-5	5-3.	Operator Control Panel Menu Tree	5-11
4-5.	Library shipping lock and label storage location on rear panel of library.	4-6	5-4.	Monitor: Library menu	5-12
4-6.	Rack Kit Mounting hardware.	4-7	5-5.	Monitor: Drive menu	5-14
4-7.	Examples of EIA units for round hole and square hole installations	4-8	5-6.	Example of a 4U Monitor: Inventory menu	5-15
4-8.	Rear view of a rack showing the narrow part of the rail.	4-8	5-7.	Overview of inventoried cartridges: Lower Left Magazine of a 4U Library	5-16
4-9.	Front view of a rack showing the rails installed.	4-9	5-8.	Control: I/O Station menu	5-16
4-10.	2U library side screws to remove	4-9	5-9.	Control: Move Cartridges menu	5-17
4-11.	2U library rack anchors and mounting brackets.	4-9	5-10.	Control: Magazine menu	5-17
4-12.	Sliding the 2U library into the rack	4-10	5-11.	Control: Re-Inventory menu.	5-18
4-13.	Sliding the 4U library into the rack	4-10	5-12.	Configure: Logical Libraries menu	5-19
4-14.	Securing the 2U library to the rack	4-11	5-13.	Configure: Library menu	5-20
4-15.	Securing the 4U library to the rack	4-11	5-14.	Configure: Drive menu	5-22
4-16.	Attaching SCSI ([1]), Fibre Channel ([4]), and SAS ([2]) cables to the 4U library	4-12	5-15.	Configure: Network menu	5-23
4-17.	Removing the protective label from the power receptacle	4-13	5-16.	Configure: Set Access PIN menu	5-24
4-18.	Log in screen on the Web User Interface	4-17	5-17.	Configure: Restore Defaults menu	5-24
4-19.	The 2U library Configure Library: General screen	4-19	5-18.	Configure: Set Date and Time menu	5-26
4-20.	Example: The 4U library Configure Library: General screen	4-20	5-19.	Configure: Path Failover	5-26
			5-20.	Service: Library Verify menu	5-27
			5-21.	Service: Run Tests menu	5-27
			5-22.	Service: Service menu	5-28
			5-23.	Service: Display Contrast menu	5-29
			5-24.	The 2U library Monitor Library: Library Identity page.	5-31
			5-25.	The 4U library Monitor Library: Library Identity page.	5-31

5-26.	The 4U library Monitor Library: Drive Identity page showing one Fibre Channel drive (#1) and one SCSI drive (#2).	5-33	10-2.	Shipping lock and label	10-2
5-27.	The 4U library Monitor Library: Library Status page	5-34	10-3.	Library drive sled without ElectroStatic Discharge (ESD) springs (SCSI sled shown)	10-3
5-28.	The 4U library Monitor Library: Drive Status page	5-36	10-4.	Library drive sled with ESD springs [1] (SAS sled shown)	10-4
5-29.	The 2U library Monitor Library: Inventory page	5-37	10-5.	Drive sled components (full-high fibre drive in top position, half-high SCSI drive in middle position, half-high SAS drive in bottom position) on back panel of a 4U library	10-4
5-30.	The 4U library Monitor Library: Inventory page	5-38	10-6.	Pulling the drive sled out of the library (drive sled without ESD springs shown)	10-5
5-31.	The 4U library Configure Library: General and Extended page.	5-40	10-7.	Pushing the drive sled into the library (drive sled without ESD springs shown)	10-6
5-32.	The 4U library Configure Library: Logical Libraries page	5-40	10-8.	Diagrams for applying conductive tape for ESD protection to the back of a drive sled installed in a 2U or 4U library	10-7
5-33.	The 4U library Configure Library: Path Failover page	5-41	10-9.	A power supply being removed from a 2U library	10-8
5-34.	Path Failover license verification page	5-41	10-10.	A Library Controller Card being removed from the library	10-9
5-35.	Feature Activation Key screen	5-42	10-11.	Rear panel of a 4U library with a Fibre Channel full height drive in the top position, a SCSI half height drive in the middle position, and a SAS half height drive in the bottom position	10-11
5-36.	Configure Library: Encryption Feature configuration screen	5-42	10-12.	Removing the two mounting bracket screws anchoring the library to the rack (one screw on each side of the library)	10-11
5-37.	The Configure Library: Drive page for a 4U library.	5-44	10-13.	Foot pads installed on the bottom of the library enclosure	10-13
5-38.	Configure Library: Network page	5-45	10-14.	Removing the shipping label and lock from the top of the library and storing on the rear panel	10-14
5-39.	Warning screen	5-45	10-15.	Library shipping lock and label storage location on the rear panel of the library	10-14
5-40.	Configure Library: User Access page	5-47	10-16.	Removing a Library Controller Card from the library	10-16
5-41.	The Configure Library: Date & Time page	5-47	10-17.	Library Front Panel LEDs	10-17
5-42.	Configure Library: Logs & Traces page	5-48	10-18.	Removing a drive sled from the library (drive sled without ESD springs shown)	10-18
5-43.	Configure Library: Event Notification page	5-48	10-19.	Drive sled taping diagrams	10-19
5-44.	Configure Library: Restore Defaults page	5-49	10-20.	Access hole for the left magazine (facing rear of library)	10-20
5-45.	Manage Library: Move Media page	5-49	10-21.	Access hole for the right magazine (facing rear of library)	10-21
5-46.	Manage Library: Perform Inventory page	5-50	10-22.	Left magazine pulled out of a 4U library (facing front of library)	10-22
5-47.	Manage Library: Release Magazine page	5-50	10-23.	A power supply being removed from a library	10-23
5-48.	Service Library: Clean Drive page	5-51	10-24.	Mounting brackets and anchors for securing the library in a rack (one bracket and anchor on each side of the library).	10-24
5-49.	Service Library: View Logs page	5-51	10-25.	Front view of a rack showing the rails installed	10-24
5-50.	Service Library: View Drive Logs screen	5-52	A-1.	Configuration of a One Partition System	A-3
5-51.	Service: Save Drive Dump	5-52	A-2.	Configuration of a Two Partition System	A-4
5-52.	Service Library: Perform Diagnostics page	5-53	A-3.	Configuration of a Three Partition System	A-4
5-53.	Service Library: Perform Key Path Diagnostics page	5-53	A-4.	Configuration of a Four Partition System	A-5
5-54.	The 2U library Service Library: Upgrade Firmware page	5-54	A-5.	Examples of SCSI Element Addressing	A-5
5-55.	The 4U library Service Library: Upgrade Firmware page	5-55			
5-56.	Service Library: Reboot page	5-55			
6-1.	The LTO Ultrium 800 GB Data Cartridge	6-1			
6-2.	Ultrium WORM Tape Cartridge	6-3			
6-3.	Sample bar code label on the LTO Ultrium 4 Tape Cartridge	6-5			
6-4.	Setting the write-protect switch	6-6			
6-5.	Double-boxing tape cartridges for shipping	6-7			
6-6.	Checking for gaps in the seams of a cartridge	6-8			
7-1.	A 250w power supply with LEDs	7-8			
7-2.	A 80w power supply without LEDs	7-9			
9-1.	Access holes for the left magazine	9-2			
9-2.	Access holes for the right magazine	9-3			
9-3.	Left Magazines pulled out of the 2U library	9-4			
9-4.	Left Magazines pulled out of the 4U Library	9-4			
10-1.	Shipping lock and label storage location	10-2			

Tables

1.	Minimum Firmware Levels for common Library features	iii	5-11.	Drive Identity page elements	5-43
1-1.	2U library and 4U library front panel descriptions	1-2	6-1.	Ultrium data and cleaning cartridge compatibility with Ultrium tape drive . . .	6-2
1-2.	2U library and 4U library rear panel descriptions	1-4	6-2.	Cartridges and VOLSERs compatible with the Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4 Tape Drive . .	6-4
1-3.	Internal view description	1-6	6-3.	Environment for operating, storing, and shipping the LTO Ultrium Tape Cartridge .	6-9
1-4.	Tape drive model and interface type	1-8	7-1.	Troubleshooting table	7-5
1-5.	Library storage capacity and data transfer rate	1-9	7-2.	Power Supply LED Meanings	7-9
3-1.	Host Drive Interface Support.	3-6	8-1.	Error Codes	8-2
3-2.	Maximum bus length between terminators	3-7	8-2.	Sub error codes	8-8
3-3.	Recommended maximum quantity of drives per SCSI bus	3-7	10-1.	10-17
4-1.	Location criteria	4-1	A-1.	2U library SCSI Element Types and Element Addresses	A-1
5-1.	Menu navigation shortcuts	5-1	A-2.	4U library SCSI Element Types and Element Addresses	A-1
5-2.	Library Control Keys	5-9	A-3.	2U library SCSI element addresses for storage slots and drive slot	A-1
5-3.	Factory Default Settings	5-25	A-4.	4U library SCSI element addresses for storage slots and drive slot	A-2
5-4.	Web User Interface Menus	5-29	B-1.	TapeAlert Flags Supported by the Ultrium Tape Drive.	B-3
5-5.	Library Identity page elements.	5-30	C-1.	Library Sense Keys, ASC and ASCQ	C-1
5-6.	Drive Identity page elements	5-31	C-2.	LTO Tape Drive Sense Data	C-6
5-7.	Library Status page elements	5-33			
5-8.	Drive Status page elements	5-34			
5-9.	Configure Library: General page elements	5-39			
5-10.	Configure Library: Specific page elements	5-39			

Safety and Environmental Notices

When using this product, observe the danger, caution, and attention notices that are contained in this guide. The notices are accompanied by symbols that represent the severity of the safety condition.

The sections that follow define each type of safety notice and give examples.

Danger Notice



A danger notice calls attention to a situation that is potentially lethal or extremely hazardous to people. A lightning bolt symbol always accompanies a danger notice to represent a dangerous electrical condition.

Caution Notice

A caution notice calls attention to a situation that is potentially hazardous to people because of some existing condition. A caution notice can be accompanied by one of several symbols:

If the symbol is...	It means....
	A hazardous electrical condition with less severity than electrical danger.
	A generally hazardous condition not represented by other safety symbols.
 Class I	A hazardous condition due to the use of a laser in the product. Laser symbols are always accompanied by the classification of the laser as defined by the U. S. Department of Health and Human Services (for example, Class I, Class II, and so forth).
	A hazardous condition due to mechanical movement in or around the product.
 svc00168	A hazardous condition due to the weight of the unit. Weight symbols are accompanied by an approximation of the product's weight.

Laser Safety and Compliance

Before using the library, review the following laser safety information.

Class I Laser Product

The library may contain a laser assembly that complies with the performance standards set by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for a Class I laser product. Class I laser products do not emit hazardous laser radiation. The library has the necessary protective housing and scanning safeguards to ensure that laser radiation is inaccessible during operation or is within Class I limits. External safety agencies have reviewed the library and have obtained approvals to the latest standards as they apply.

Performing the Safety Inspection Procedure

Before you service the unit, perform the following safety inspection procedure:

1. Stop all activity between the host and the library's tape drives.
2. Turn off the power to the library by pushing in on the **Power** button (1) shown in Figure 1-1 on Page 1-1 for 4 seconds.
3. If drives are SCSI attached, disconnect the SCSI cable and check the SCSI bus terminator for damage.
4. Unplug the library's power cord or cords from the electrical outlet and the library power supply.
5. Check the library's power cord for damage, such as a pinched, cut, or frayed cord.
6. If drives are SCSI attached, check the tape drive's SCSI bus (signal) cable for damage.
7. If drives are FC/SAS attached, check the tape drive's FC/SAS cable for damage.
8. Check the cover of the library for sharp edges, damage, or alterations that expose its internal parts.
9. Check the cover of the library for proper fit. It should be in place and secure.
10. Check the product label at the rear of the library to make sure that it matches the voltage at your outlet.

Rack Safety

The following general safety information should be used for all rack mounted devices.

DANGER

- Always lower the leveling pads on the rack cabinet.
- Always install stabilizer brackets on the rack cabinet.
- To avoid hazardous conditions due to uneven mechanical loading, always install the heaviest devices in the bottom of the rack cabinet. Always install servers and optional devices starting from the bottom of the rack cabinet.
- Rack mounted devices are not to be used as a shelf or work space. Do not place any object on top of rack mounted devices.
- Each rack cabinet might have more than one power cord. Ensure that all power cords in the rack cabinet are disconnected before servicing any device in the rack cabinet.
- Connect all devices installed in a rack cabinet to power devices installed in the same rack cabinet. Do not plug a power cord from a device installed in one rack cabinet into a power device installed in a different rack cabinet.
- An electrical outlet that is not correctly wired could place hazardous voltage on the metal parts of the system or the devices that attach to the system. It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the outlet is correctly wired and grounded to prevent an electrical shock.

CAUTION:

- Do not install a unit in a rack where the internal rack ambient temperatures will exceed the manufacturer's recommended ambient temperature for all your rack mounted devices.
- Do not install a unit in a rack where the air flow is compromised. Ensure that air flow is not blocked or reduced on any side of the unit.
- Connect the equipment to the supply circuit such that overloading of the circuits does not compromise the supply wiring or overcurrent protection. To provide the correct power connection to a rack, refer to the rating labels located on the equipment in the rack to determine the total power requirement of the supply circuit.
- *(For sliding drawers)* Do not pull out or install any drawer or feature if the rack stabilizer brackets are not attached to the rack. Do not pull out more than one drawer at a time. The rack may become unstable if you pull out more than one drawer at a time.
- *(For fixed drawers)* Do not move a fixed drawer. Attempting to move the drawer partially or completely out of the rack may cause the rack to become unstable or cause the drawer to fall out of the rack.

CAUTION:

Removing components from the upper positions in the rack cabinet improves rack stability during relocation. Follow these general guidelines whenever you relocate a populated rack cabinet within a room or building:

- Reduce the weight of the rack cabinet by removing equipment starting at the top of the rack cabinet. When possible, restore the rack cabinet to the configuration of the rack cabinet as you received it. If this configuration is not known, you must do the following:
 - Remove all devices in the 32U position and above.
 - Ensure that the heaviest devices are installed in the bottom of the rack cabinet.
 - Ensure that there are no empty U-levels between devices installed in the rack cabinet below the 32U level.
- If the rack cabinet you are relocating is part of a suite of rack cabinets, detach the rack cabinet from the suite.
- Inspect the route that you plan to take to eliminate potential hazards.
- Verify that the route that you choose can support the weight of the loaded rack cabinet. Refer to the documentation that comes with your rack cabinet for the weight of a loaded rack cabinet.
- Verify that all door openings are at least 762 x 2032 mm (30 x 80 in.).
- Ensure that all devices, shelves, drawers, doors, and cables are secure.
- Ensure that the four leveling pads are raised to their highest position.
- Ensure that there is no stabilizer bracket installed on the rack cabinet during movement.
- Do not use a ramp inclined at more than ten degrees.
- Once the rack cabinet is in the new location, do the following:
 - Lower the four leveling pads.
 - Install stabilizer brackets on the rack cabinet.
 - If you removed any devices from the rack cabinet, repopulate the rack cabinet from the lowest position to the highest position.
- If a long distance relocation is required, restore the rack cabinet to the configuration of the rack cabinet as you received it. Pack the rack cabinet in the original packaging material, or equivalent. Also lower the leveling pads to raise the casters off of the pallet and bolt the rack cabinet to the pallet.

Preface

This manual contains information and instructions necessary for the installation, operation, and service of the Dell™ PowerVault™ TL2000 Tape Library and TL4000 Tape Library.

Related Publications

Refer to the following publications for additional information.

- *Getting Started with the Dell™ PowerVault™ TL2000 and TL4000 Tape Libraries* provides installation information.
- *Dell™ PowerVault™ TL2000 Tape Library and TL4000 Tape Library SCSI Reference* provides supported SCSI commands and protocol governing the behavior of SCSI interface.

Chapter 1. Product Description

The Dell™ PowerVault™ TL2000 Tape Library (2U library) and the Dell PowerVault TL4000 Tape Library (4U library) provide compact, high-capacity, low-cost solutions for simple, unattended data backup. The 4U library houses up to 48 tape cartridges (or 45 and an elective 3-slot I/O Station) in a compact 4U form factor with easy access to cartridges via four removable magazines. The 2U library houses up to 24 tape cartridges (or 23 and an elective 1-slot I/O Station) in a compact 2U form factor with easy access to cartridges via two removable magazines.

The TL2000/TL4000 Library supports LTO3 and LTO4 tape drives with these interfaces: a Small Computer Systems Interface (SCSI), Fibre Channel interface (FC), or Serial Attached SCSI interface (SAS). LTO 3 and LTO 4 Half height drives are SAS only, and LTO 4 Full height drives are SAS and Fibre Channel only. LTO3 full height drives are SCSI and Fibre Channel only.

Front Panel

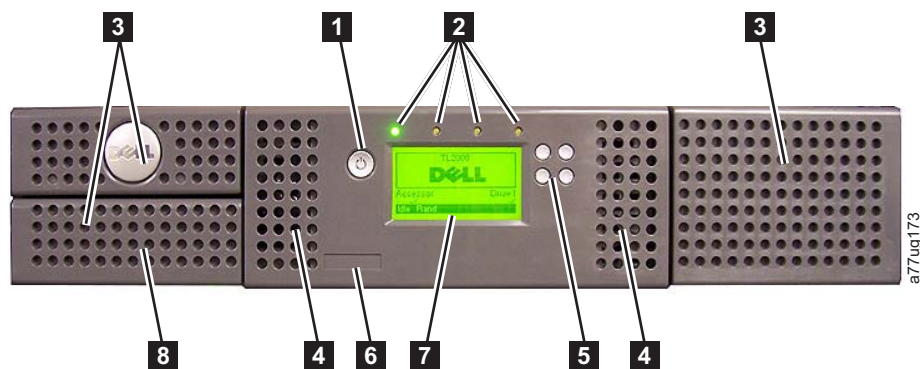


Figure 1-1. Front panel of a 2U library

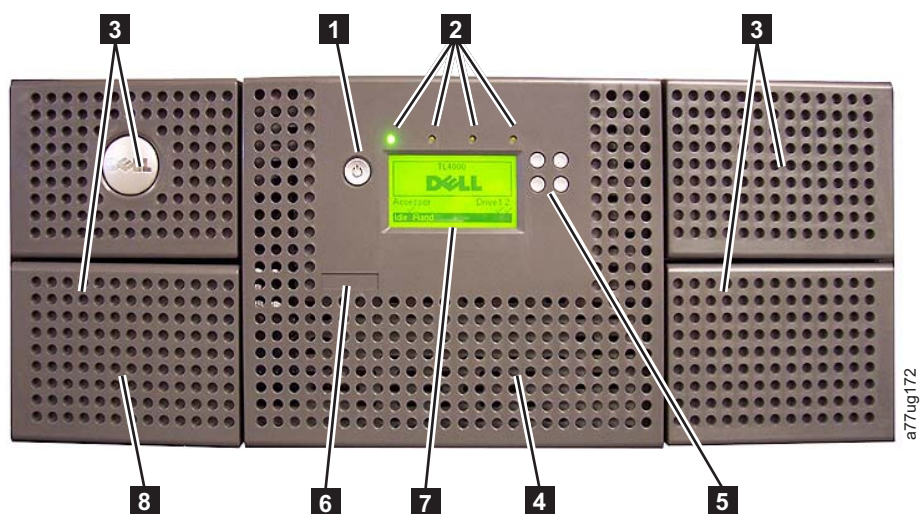


Figure 1-2. Front panel of a 4U library

Table 1-1 below contains front panel descriptions for both the 2U library in Figure 1-1 on page 1-1 and the 4U library in Figure 1-2.

Table 1-1. 2U library and 4U library front panel descriptions

Number	Item	Description
1	Power button	Pressing this button will power ON the library. Pressing and holding this button for 4 seconds will power OFF the unit (soft power down). No power switch or button can be found on the back panel of the library.
2	Front panel LEDs (left to right)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ready/Activity (Green LED) - It is lit any time the unit is powered ON and able to function. It should blink whenever there is library or drive activity, or when the library is in the process of powering up. • Clean Drive (Amber LED) - It will be lit when the drive needs to be cleaned. The LED will be turned OFF after the drive is cleaned successfully. • Attention (Amber LED) - It will be lit when there has been a failure that indicates a piece of media is bad, marginal, or invalid. It will be cleared when all invalid cartridges have been exported from the library. The amber LED may also be lit because a power supply or a power supply fan is failing, or a drive sled is defective, missing, or has been replaced by a different drive type. • Error (Amber LED) - It will be lit when there is an unrecoverable library or drive failure. A message is displayed at the same time on the Operator Control Panel display.
3	Cartridge magazines	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The 2U library contains two cartridge magazines. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The left magazine can hold up to 12 cartridges (or 11 data cartridges and the elective 1-slot I/O Station.) – The right magazine can hold up to 12 cartridges. • The 4U library contains four cartridge magazines. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The upper left magazine can hold up to 12 cartridges. – The lower left magazine can hold up to 12 cartridges (or 9 data cartridges and the elective 3-slot I/O Station.) – The upper right magazine can hold up to 12 cartridges. – The lower right magazine can hold up to 12 cartridges.
4	Air vents	These vents draw cooler air into the library enclosure and allow warm air to escape which helps keep the library at a normal operating temperature.

Table 1-1. 2U library and 4U library front panel descriptions (continued)

Number	Item	Description
5	Control keys	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UP (+) - The upper left button is used to scroll upward through menu items. • DOWN (-) - The lower left button is used to scroll downward through menu items. • CANCEL (X) - The upper right button is used to cancel a user action and return to the previous menu screen. • SELECT - The lower right button is used to display a sub-menu or force an accessor action.
6	Service Tag	This service tag links the library to your warranty.
7	Operator Control Panel display	This component is a 128 X 64 monochrome graphic display.
8	I/O Station	<p>The Input/Output (I/O) Station is used to import and export cartridges into and out of the library.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The 2U library has an elective 1-slot I/O Station. • The 4U library has an elective 3-slot I/O Station.

Rear Panel

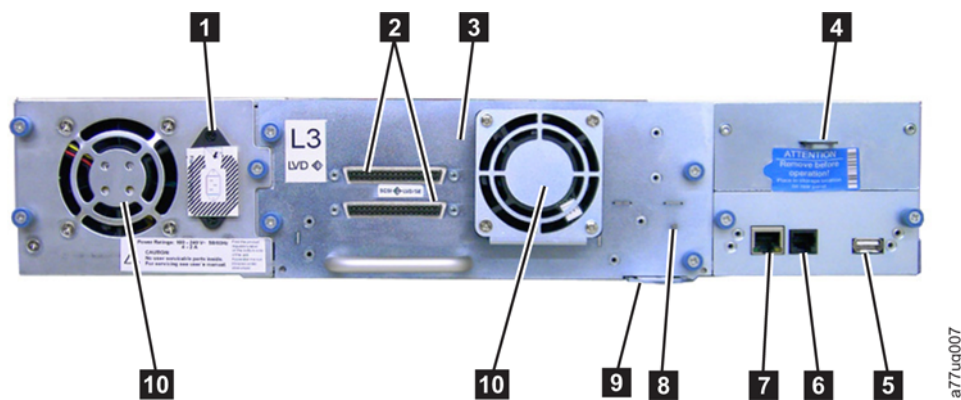


Figure 1-3. Rear panel of a 2U library with a SCSI drive

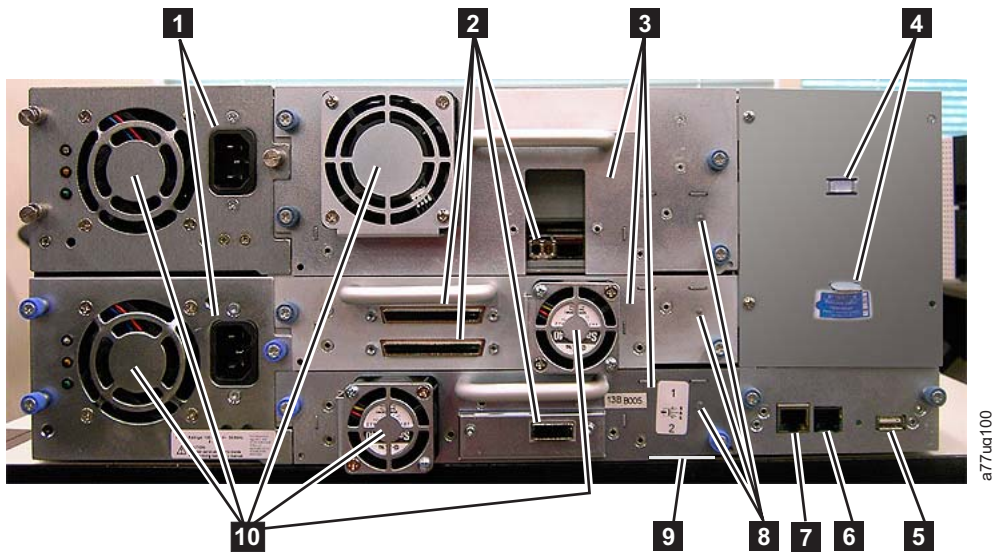


Figure 1-4. Rear panel of a 4U library with Full height Fibre Channel drive and Half height SCSI and SAS drives. The configuration shown in this figure is used as an example only. This configuration is not recommended. Half height SCSI drives are not supported on the TL2000/TL4000.

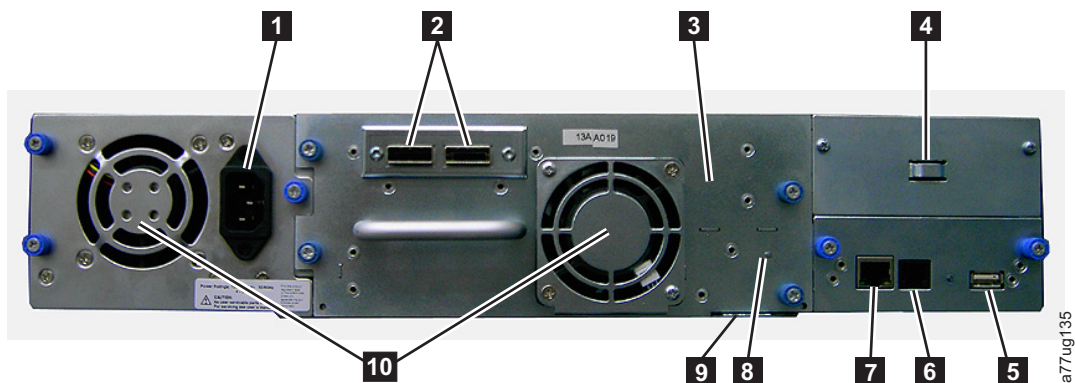


Figure 1-5. Rear panel of a 2U library with a full height dual port SAS drive

Table 1-2. 2U library and 4U library rear panel descriptions

Number	Item	Description
1	Power connector(s)	Both libraries require a 110/220 volt AC power connection. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The 2U library has one power supply. The 4U library has a minimum of one power supply, but has the capability of adding a redundant power supply.
2	Host interface connectors	The library has one or more of the following host interface connectors on the drive sled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a 68-pin HD SCSI connector a Fibre Channel connector a SFF-8088 mini-SAS connector
3	Tape drive sled	This library supports the Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4 Tape Drive. The tape drive in the library is packaged in a container called a drive sled. Drive sleds come in a Full height or Half height configuration. The drive sled is a customer replaceable unit (CRU), and is hot-pluggable - designed for easy removal and replacement.

Table 1-2. 2U library and 4U library rear panel descriptions (continued)

Number	Item	Description
4	Shipping lock and label storage location	The shipping lock, which secures the accessor during shipping, and associated label are stored on the rear panel of the library for future use. See “Removing and Storing the Shipping Lock” on page 4-4. Attention: The shipping lock must be removed before powering ON the library to allow the accessor to function properly.
5	USB port	An alternative communication path to the library. For use by Service Personnel.
6	Serial port	This port is used to communicate serially with the library using an RJ-11 connector. For use by Service Personnel.
7	Ethernet port	This port is used to connect the library to a network.
8	Tape drive LED	This LED indicates the current status of the drive. When the LED is green, it indicates normal drive activity.
9	Service Tag/Serial Number	The service tag and serial number on the pull-out label links the library to your warranty.
10	Fan vents	These vents allow air to escape from the power supply and tape drive sled.

Internal View of Library

Important: FOR REFERENCE ONLY. The customer is not authorized to remove the top cover of the library. No customer serviceable components are inside the library.

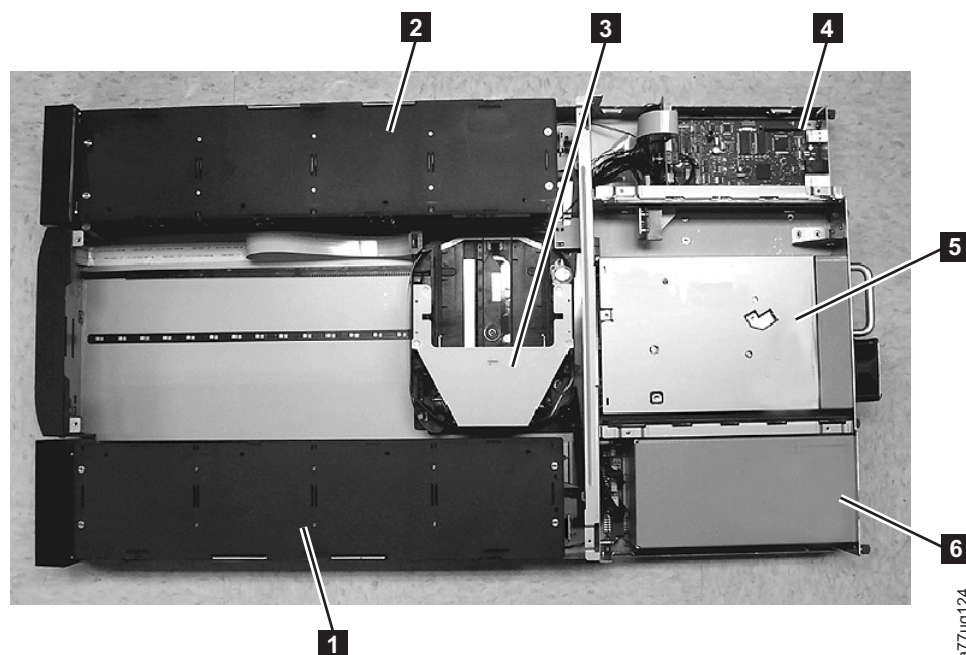


Figure 1-6. Internal view of the library

Table 1-3. Internal view description

Number	Item	Description
1	Right cartridge magazine(s)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In a 2U library, the right magazine can hold up to 12 cartridges. In a 4U library, the right magazines can hold up to 24 cartridges.
2	Left cartridge magazine(s)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In a 2U library, the left magazine can hold up to 11 cartridges and houses the elective 1-slot I/O Station. In a 4U library, the left magazines can hold up to 21 cartridges and houses the elective 3-slot I/O Station.
3	Accessor	<p>This component contains the library robot and bar code reader. The accessor moves cartridges to/from the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I/O Station storage slots tape drive(s)
4	Library Controller Card	This component is a customer replaceable unit (CRU) and stores the user configuration information or vital product data (VPD).
5	Tape drive sled	<p>Both libraries support the Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4 Tape Drive. Each tape drive in the library is packaged in a container called a drive sled. The drive sled is a customer replaceable unit (CRU), and is designed for easy removal and replacement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The 2U library houses one full height tape drive sled or up to two half height tape drive sleds. The 4U library houses up to two full height tape drive sleds or up to four half height tape drive sleds. Combinations of full height and half height drive sleds are allowed.
6	Power supply	The power supply is a customer replaceable unit (CRU) and the sole source of power for the library. The 2U has one power supply. The 4U has one or can have an optional second power supply for redundancy.

Bar Code Reader

The bar code reader is an integral part of the library accessor. The bar code reader provides inventory feedback to the host application, Operator Control Panel display, and Web User Interface by reading cartridge bar code labels. The library stores the customized inventory data in memory.

Library firmware supports a 6 or 8 character volume serial number (VOLSER) on the bar code label on the tape cartridge. Bar code selection is available for libraries with library code 4.50 or greater.

Encryption

The LTO Ultrium 4 Tape Drive supports Application Managed Encryption (AME), and Library Managed Encryption (LME), using T10 encryption methods, for SAS and Fibre Channel drives only. Data encryption is supported with LTO Ultrium 4 Data Cartridges only. Encryption is also supported with library firmware version 5.80 and higher and drive firmware version 77BE and greater.

The encryption enabled drive contains the necessary hardware and firmware to encrypt and decrypt host tape application data. Encryption policy and encryption keys are provided by the host application or host server. A drive digital certificate

is installed at manufacturing time. Each drive receives a unique serial number and certificate. The T10 application may validate each drive instance by checking the drive's digital certificate.

CAUTION:

The library must be offline from any user and all media must be removed from the drives before license keys are installed or any configuration modifications are made. Please refer to "Power ON/OFF" on page 2-4 and "Removing Cartridges from Magazine Slots" on page 9-1 for instructions to take the library offline and to eject media from the drives.

To prevent possible data loss due to an EKM server failure, Dell recommends the use of a primary and secondary EKM server. This configuration provides redundancy in the event the primary EKM server is down or unavailable. Please refer to Chapter 2 (Multiple Key Managers for Redundancy) of the Dell Encryption Key Manager User's Guide and to "Configure Library: Encryption" on page 5-41 for information on configuring a primary and secondary EKM for your library.

If the backup job fails due to an EKM server failure, the job will recover if connectivity is restored to the EKM server prior to expiration of the timeout set in the tape backup software application.

Enabling library-managed encryption on a PowerVault TL2000 or TL4000 is a 6 step process.

1. Upgrade the library and drive firmware to the latest versions. The firmware can be found at <http://support.dell.com>.

2. Enable library-managed encryption on the library via the license key if not already licensed. Please refer to Figure 2-25 for activation instructions. .

If you purchased library-managed encryption at the time you purchased your library, a hard copy of the license key is provided with your library as a backup. If there are any issues with the license key for library-managed encryption purchased with the library, please visit <http://www.dell.com/tapeautomation> to obtain your license key. You will need the library serial number and worldwide node name to obtain the license key. Please refer to the following tables in this document for instructions on locating this information:

- Table 1.2 for library serial number
- Table 4.5 for library worldwide node name

If this does not resolve your issue, please contact Dell technical support.

3. Configure library-managed encryption on your library. Please refer to Figure 2-26 for instructions.
4. Install the Dell Encryption Key Manager (EKM) application on the server designated for EKM. Please refer to Chapter 3.0 of the *Dell Encryption Key Manager User's Guide* for instructions. This document can be found at <http://support.dell.com>.
5. Configure the EKM application. Please refer to Chapter 4.0 of the *Dell Encryption Key Manager User's Guide* for instructions.
6. Start the EKM application. Please refer to Chapter 5.0 of the *Dell Encryption Key Manager User's Guide* for instructions.

Note: All encryption settings should be configured or re-verified in the drive after any library or drive reset. This is because a new drive may have been added or an existing drive may have been swapped with another drive.

Supported Internet Protocols

The library supports the following Internet protocols:

- IPv4
- IPv6

To learn more about IPv4, visit <http://www.iana.org/>. To learn more about IPv6, visit <http://www.ipv6.org/>.

SNMP Messaging

Occasionally, the library may encounter a situation that you want to know about, such as an open magazine or a fault that causes the library to stop. The library provides a standard TCP/IP protocol called Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) to send alerts about conditions (such as need for operator intervention) over a TCP/IP LAN network to an SNMP monitoring station. These alerts are called SNMP traps. Using the information supplied in each SNMP trap, the monitoring station (together with customer-supplied software) can alert operations personnel of possible problems or operator interventions that occur.

In summary, each trap provides the following information:

- **Product Identification** such as product name, description, manufacturer, model number, firmware level, and the URL that the trap is designated for.
- **Product Status** such as the severity of the trap, status (current and previous) and the time the trap occurred.
- **Library State** (physical device status) such as identification and status of devices that are monitored. In the case of the library, it would include enclosure, power supply, controller, magazine status, drive count, cartridge slot count, and I/O station count. Also included would be certain library statistics, and where appropriate, the fault FSC (fault symptom code) including the severity and description of that fault.
- **Drive Status** such as the identification of each drive in the library, firmware level, serial number and other address and status information.
- **Trap Definitions** such as library status change, open magazine, I/O accessed, hard fault information, drive cleaning requests, excessive retries and library returning to normal operations.

Maximum Library Storage Capacity and Data Transfer Rate

Maximum library storage capacity and maximum data transfer rates are as follows:

Table 1-4. Tape drive model and interface type

Tape Drive Model	Host Interface
Ultrium 4 Full height drives	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 4 Gb/s Fibre Channel• 3 Gb/s Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) - dual port
Ultrium 4 Half height drives	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 3 Gb/s SAS - single port
Ultrium 3 Full height drives	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ultra160 SCSI LVD (depending on drive; single-ended (SE) is not recommended as it will severely degrade performance)• 4 Gb/s Fibre Channel
Ultrium 3 Half height drives	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 3 Gb/s SAS - single port

Table 1-5. Library storage capacity and data transfer rate

Characteristic	2U Library Specification	4U Library Specification
Maximum storage capacity - Ultrium 4 Data Cartridges	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 24 data cartridges • Native: 19.2 TB • Compressed: 38.4 TB (2:1 compression) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 48 data cartridges • Native: 38.4 TB • Compressed: 75.2 TB (2:1 compression)
Maximum storage capacity - Ultrium 3 Data Cartridges	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 24 data cartridges • Native: 9.6 TB • Compressed: 19.2 TB (2:1 compression) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 48 data cartridges • Native: 19.2 TB • Compressed: 38.4 TB (2:1 compression)
Maximum data transfer rate	<p>LTO 3 HH: Native: 60 MBs</p> <p>LTO 3 FH: Native: 80 MBs (288 GB/hr.)</p> <p>Compressed: 160 MBs (576 GB/hr.) (2:1 compression)</p> <p>LTO 4 HH and FH: Native: 120 MBs</p> <p>Compressed: 240 MBs (2:1 compression)</p>	

Ultrium Tape Drives

This library supports the Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4 Tape Drives. Each tape drive in the library is packaged in a container called a drive sled. The drive sled is a customer replaceable unit (CRU), and is designed for quick removal and replacement in the library.

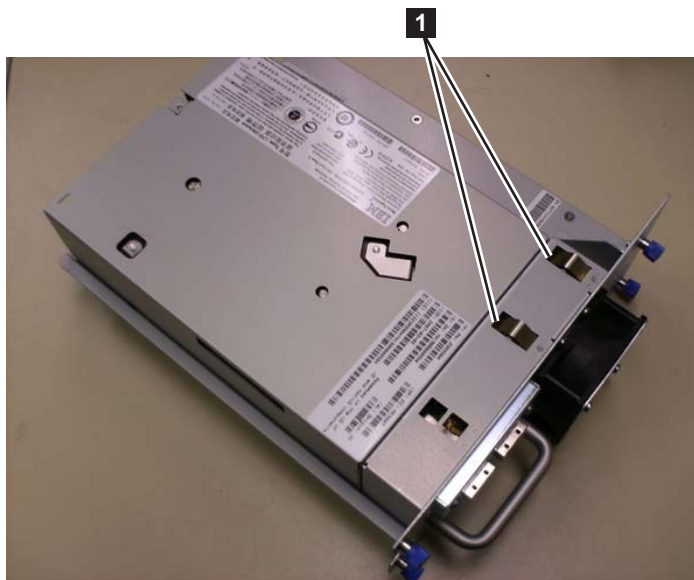
The Ultrium 4 Full height Tape Drives support SAS, or Fibre Channel interfaces. It features two SFF-8088 SAS connectors, or one LC Fibre Channel connector. The Ultrium 4 Half height Tape Drive supports one SAS SFF-8088 connector.

The Ultrium 3 Full height Tape Drive supports LVD Ultra160, or Fibre Channel interfaces. It features two HD68 connectors or one LC Fibre Channel connector. The Ultrium 3 Half height Drive supports one SAS SFF-8088 connector.



a77ug008

Figure 1-7. Library drive sled without ESD springs (SCSI sled shown)



a77ug202

Figure 1-8. Library drive sled with ESD springs [1] (SAS sled shown)

Speed Matching

To improve system performance, the Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4 Tape Drive uses a technique called *speed matching* to dynamically adjust its native (uncompressed) data rate to the slower data rate of the attached server.

Channel Calibration

The channel calibration feature of the Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4 Tape Drive customizes each read/write data channel for optimum performance. The customization enables compensation for variations in the recording channel transfer function, media characteristics, and read/write head characteristics.

Power Management

The Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4 Tape Drive's power management function controls the drive's electronics so that part of the electronics completely turn OFF when circuit functions are not needed for the drive's operation.

Media

The library uses Ultrium Tape Cartridges that provide up to 800 GB native capacity (up to 1600 GB with 2:1 hardware data compression) for LTO-4 tape drives, and up to 400 GB native capacity (up to 800 GB with 2:1 hardware data compression) for LTO-3 tape drives.

Ultrium 4 tape drives can read and write LTO Ultrium 3 Data Cartridges at original Ultrium 3 capacities, and can also read LTO Ultrium 2 Data Cartridges with improved data rates. Ultrium 3 Tape Drives can read and write LTO Ultrium 2 Data Cartridges at original Ultrium 2 capacities, and can also read LTO Ultrium 1 Data Cartridges with improved data rates of up to 20 MB/second native data transfer rate (40 MB/second with 2:1 compression). Ultrium 4 tape drives cannot read Ultrium 1 tapes.

Supported cartridges include:

- LTO Ultrium 800 GB Data Cartridge (Ultrium 4)
- LTO Ultrium 400 GB Data Cartridge (Ultrium 3)
- Write-Once-Read-Many Data Cartridge (WORM; Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4)
- LTO Ultrium 200 GB Data Cartridge (Ultrium 2)
- 100 GB Data Cartridge (Ultrium 1; read only)
- LTO Ultrium Cleaning Cartridge

For additional information, see Chapter 6, "Using Ultrium Media," on page 6-1.

Library Specifications

Physical Specifications

Specification	2U library	4U library
Height	Rack mount 87.6 mm (3.44 in), stand-alone 97.6 mm (3.84 in)	Rack mount 175.2 mm (6.9 in), stand-alone 185.2 mm (7.3 in)
Width	447.5 mm (17.6 in.)	447.5 mm (17.6 in.)
Depth	Rack mount 740 mm (29.13 in), stand-alone 810 mm (31.9 in)	Rack mount 740 mm (29.13 in), stand-alone 810 mm (31.9 in)
Weight with 1 drive and without media	15.59 kg (34.37 lbs.)	21.32 kg (47 lbs.)
Weight with media	20.67 kg (45.57 lbs.)	31.71 kg (69.9 lbs.)

Power Specifications

AC power voltage	100-127 VAC; 200-240 VAC (4 - 2 A)
Line frequency	50-60 Hz

Operation Specifications

Library with Ultrium 4 drive(s)	2U Library	4U Library
Maximum storage capacity	Maximum number of data cartridges: 24 Native: 19.2 TB Compressed: 38.4 TB (2:1 compression)	Maximum number of data cartridges: 48 Native: 38.4 TB Compressed: 75.2 TB (2:1 compression)
Number of slots	24 (including I/O Station)	48 (Including 3 I/O station slots)
Maximum data transfer rate (maximum sustained with optimally compressible data - MB/sec)	Native(FH/HH Drives): 120 MBs Compressed: 240 MBs (2:1 compression)	
Drive types	Ultrium 4 Full height drive Fibre Channel, SAS Ultrium 4 Half height Drive: SAS	
Interfaces	4 Gb/s Fibre Channel 3 Gb/s SAS	
*Host Interface Drive Transfer Rates may vary depending on host usage and interface utilization.		

Library with Ultrium 3 drive(s)	2U library	4U library
Maximum storage capacity	Maximum number of data cartridges: 24 Native: 9.6 TB Compressed: 19.2 TB (2:1 compression)	Maximum number of data cartridges: 48 Native: 19.2 TB Compressed: 38.4 TB (2:1 compression)
Number of slots	24 (including I/O Station)	48 (Including 3 I/O station slots.)
Maximum data transfer rate	Native for Ultrium 3 Full height: 80 MBs (288 GB/hour) Compressed for Ultrium 3 Full height: 160 MBs (576 GB/hour (2:1 compression)) Native for Ultrium 3 Half height: 60 MB/s Compressed for Ultrium 3 Half height: 120 MB/s	
Drive types	Ultrium 3 Full height Drive: SCSI, Fibre Channel Ultrium 3 Half height Drive: Serial Attached SCSI (SAS)	
Interfaces	Ultra160 SCSI LVD 4 Gb/s Fibre Channel 3 Gb/s SAS	

Environmental Specifications

Temperature	
Operating	10° to 35° C (50° to 95° F)
Storage, without cartridges	-30° to 60° C (-22° to 140° F)
Wet bulb, operating	26° C (79.0° F) maximum
Temperature shock immunity - maximum rate of change	10° C (18° F) per hour
Miscellaneous	
Dust concentration	less than 200 microgram/cubic meter

Altitude (operating)	2500 meters (8200 ft.) at 25°C ambient
Maximum acoustical noise sound power levels LwAd in bels	6.6/6.8
Humidity	
Operating	15% to 80% RH non-condensing
Storage, without cartridges	10% to 90% RH non-condensing

Product Environment

The library is designed to operate in a general business environment.

The library meets the acoustical requirements for general business area category 2D. Category 2D states that the library should be installed a minimum of 4 m (13 ft.) from a permanent work station.

To allow for service access, install the library a minimum of 0.9 m (3 ft.) from all obstacles.

The library is a precision computer peripheral. To ensure maximum longevity of your library, locate the library away from dust, dirt, and airborne particulates:

- Keep the library away from high-traffic areas, especially if the floor is carpeted. Carpeting harbors dust and people walking on the carpet can cause the carpet fibers and the dust to become airborne.
- Keep the library out of printer/copier rooms because of toner and paper dust. Additionally, do not store paper supplies next to the library.
- Keep the library away from moving air caused by doorways, open windows, fans, and air conditioners.

Ensure that the machine covers are always kept closed to minimize any contamination from airborne particles.

Supported Device Drivers

The latest levels of device drivers can be downloaded by visiting <http://support.dell.com>.

Note: The TL2000 and TL4000 libraries utilize the generic SCSI drivers in RHEL 4 and 5. Depending on the ISV you are using, you will use either the sg or st driver. Please refer to your ISV documentation for more information on which driver to use.

Chapter 2. User Interfaces

This library has two user interfaces.

- Operator Control Panel - located on the front panel of the library
- Web User Interface - accessed via a web browser

Operator Control Panel

The Operator Control Panel operates in two basic modes.

- **User Interaction mode** - This mode is employed when a user is pushing buttons on the Operator Control Panel.
- **System Driven mode** - This is the normal mode of operation. In this mode, the Operator Control Panel displays status associated with the actions that were caused from commands issued via the drive's internal (drive to library) serial interface.

When an Operator Control Panel button is pressed and released, the Operator Control Panel automatically transitions to User Interaction mode. User Interaction mode will continue until 3 minutes after a user stops pushing buttons, or the requested accessor action stops - whichever is longer. At which time, the Operator Control Panel will return to System Driven mode.

If necessary, the Operator Control Panel will automatically transition to the System Driven mode. When this occurs, the library must remember what the user was doing before the display mode changed. Therefore the next button pressed will only transition the Operator Control Panel to the User Interaction mode from the System Driven mode.

In case of the activated user security feature, the User Interaction mode is restricted to **Login** and **Monitor** menu items, until a user logs in with a correct password.

Operator Control Panel Philosophy

Operator Control Panel operation must obey some basic rules. These rules of operation constitute a philosophy.

- Any operational conflict between commands received over the host interface or the Web User Interface and those entered via the Operator Control Panel will be avoided with a reservation mechanism on a first-come, first-served basis. Any reservation by the Operator Control Panel is canceled by an Operator Control Panel logout or a timeout, which cancels the User Interaction Mode.
- Library firmware will not allow a user to select an impossible request. Those situations will include, but are not limited to:
 - Moving a cartridge from any source to a full slot
 - Moving a cartridge from an empty slot
 - Loading a cartridge from any source to a full drive
 - Unloading a cartridge from an empty drive
- Any error detected by the library or drive controller and not recoverable through predetermined firmware algorithms will be considered as fatal. An error code will be displayed on the Operator Control Panel display and the error LED will

become illuminated. The error code will remain on the Operator Control Panel until a push button is pressed, which will cause the Operator Control Panel to return to the Home Screen.

- Numeric error codes are only used for unrecoverable, fatal errors, otherwise text status messages are displayed.

Power-ON Display

When the library powers ON or resets, it goes through several internally controlled processes that allow it to get initialized and running. These processes are called Power-On-Self-Test (POST). During the POST the Operator Control Panel will display information that may be meaningless until POST is complete. When the POST is finished, the library will display the current library status in the Home Screen.

While the library is going through its power up cycle the user can monitor the state of the library via the OCP; however, the user will not be able to make any configuration changes until the unit has completed its initialization routine. Attempts to make changes will be ignored.

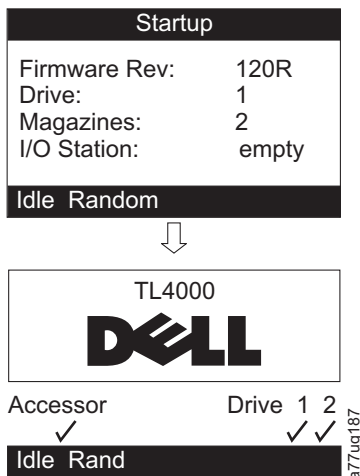


Figure 2-1. Power-ON Screens

Note about the Front Panel LEDs

All LEDs are updated during power ON and reset sequences. Upon power ON or software reset, the library will illuminate all LEDs as soon as POST allows. When initialization starts, all LEDs will be extinguished and the Ready/Activity LED will flash at a rate of approximately one second per cycle. When the mechanical initialization is complete, the Ready/Activity LED will stop flashing and be constantly illuminated.

If a library failure occurs, the Ready/Activity LED will turn OFF and the Error LED will illuminate. The Operator Control Panel will also display an appropriate error code to help identify the failure.

The following are additional operational details of LEDs:

- The **Ready/Activity** LED will be lit any time the unit is powered ON and functional. The Ready/Activity LED will blink whenever there is library or drive activity. This LED will also blink when the unit is OFFLINE.

- The **Clean** LED will only be lit when a cleaning REQUIRED has been issued by the drive. The LED will be turned OFF after a successful drive cleaning operation.
- The **Attention** LED will indicate one of the following conditions.

Problem	Action Required
Bad media	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Go to Monitor → Inventory to locate the defective cartridge. 2. Move the defective cartridge to the I/O Station. (Operator Control Panel: Control → Move Cartridges). 3. Open the I/O Station to remove the defective cartridge. (Operator Control Panel: Control → Open I/O).
Drive sled issues	Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Install a drive sled (see “Replacing a Tape Drive Sled” on page 10-3). - Modify or resubmit Logical Library setting (Operator Control Panel: Configure → Logical Libraries or Web User Interface: Configure Library → Logical Libraries). - Restore defaults (Operator Control Panel: Configure → Restore Defaults or Web User Interface: Configure Library → Restore Defaults). -
Redundant power supply failed	Complete the following steps: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace the failed power supply (see “Replacing a Power Supply” on page 10-7). 2. Cycle library power.
Power supply fan failure	Replace the power supply.

- The **Error** LED will be lit when there is an unrecoverable (i.e. hard) drive or library failure. This will happen at the same time the hard error message is displayed on the screen and the LED will remain lit until the error state is resolved.

Note: From the Operator Control Panel, run **Service** → **Library Verify**. If Library Verify runs without error, the Error LED will be turned off. If the error persists, recycle power.

Input Modes

There are several ways to enter values in the different menu items. These values are selectable predefined values, toggle values (for example, ON/OFF) and numerical values like network addresses.

Selecting Predefined Values

1. To set the predefined values, press the SELECT button to select the menu item.
2. Using the UP and DOWN buttons, select one of the various predefined values for that item.
3. As soon as the Operator Control Panel display shows the correct value, press the SELECT button to apply the value.

Toggle Values

Toggle values are used to switch between two different states like *ON* and *OFF*.

1. After navigating to the menu item, press the SELECT button to select the menu item.
2. Using the UP and DOWN buttons, select one of the various predefined states for that item.
3. Press the SELECT button to apply the new state.

Entering Numerical Values

Numerical values are needed for network addresses, password entries and other configuration entries.

1. After navigating to the menu item, the current value is displayed and the cursor highlights the first digit of the value that can be changed.
2. For each digit to be changed in the value:
 - a. Use the UP and DOWN buttons to increment / decrement the digit.
 - b. Press the SELECT button to highlight the next editable digit.
3. Press the SELECT button at the last digit to apply the complete entry, or press the CANCEL button to cancel the whole edit process and maintain the original value.

Power ON/OFF

Part of the Operator Control Panel is the Power ON/OFF button. If the library is powered ON, pressing this button for 4 seconds will initiate a controlled power down of the library (soft landing). The following operations will take place before the library shuts down completely:

- The display indicates with an appropriate message that the shutdown is in progress.
- The library controller finishes all ongoing library and drive activities.
- The accessor is moved to its home position.
- The library controller switches OFF the power supply's secondary side.

Note: The shutdown process may be aborted by releasing the button before 4 seconds has passed.

Web User Interface

Many of the same operations performed from the Operator Control Panel can also be performed remotely using the Web User Interface.

The Web User Interface lets you monitor and control your library from any terminal connected to your network or through the World Wide Web (WWW). The Web User Interface hosts a dedicated, protected Internet site that displays a graphical representation of your library.

For static IP Addresses only: After establishing a connection to the library, open any HTML browser and enter the IP address of the library. To configure the Web User Interface, you must first set the IP address using the Operator Control Panel.

Login

Important: Some options of the Web User Interface take the library OFFLINE. This inactive mode can interfere with host-based application software, causing data loss. Make sure the library is idle before attempting to perform any remote operations that will take the library OFFLINE.

To login, select the Role type and enter the correct password. The TL4000/TL2000 RMU screen shows Welcome : User, superuser, admin, or service after a successful login. The user can log out at any time by clicking on the "logout" text located in to top right corner of the RMU page.

- The User account has only viewing privileges to the unit, not able to make any configuration changes.
- Superuser - The Superuser has access to the Monitor Library and Manage Library sections.
- The Admin account has access to monitor, configure and run unit diagnostics (only exception is the advanced diagnostics reserved for service personnel only).
- The Service account has all the same privileges as the Admin account with the addition of advanced unit diagnostics.

Note: User and Superuser accounts must be enabled by the library administrator. These accounts are disabled by default.

Use the following password for logging in as an Admin user: **secure**

Each level affects which areas you have access to and what actions you can initiate from those areas.

For DHCP, use the Operator Control Panel to determine the IP Address assigned to your library. Navigate to **Monitor** → **Library** → **Identity**. Scroll down to **IP Address** and make note of the address. Enter the IP Address in your internet browser address field to access your library with the Web User Interface.

For IPv4 or Dual Stack IPv4 + IPv6, enter your library's static IP Address using the 0.0.0.0 format (four octets).

For IPv6, enter your library's static IP Address or Router Assigned IP Address using the following format: http://[0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0]. To determine your Router Assigned IP Address, navigate to **Monitor** → **Library** → **Network** on the Operator Control Panel.

If the dual IP stack is enabled (IPv4 + IPv6), IPv6 addresses cannot be configured in the OCP (Operator Control Panel) and must be configured through the Web User Interface. IPv6 addresses can only be configured in the OCP if the IPv6-only stack is enabled. In the case where the dual stack is enabled, the IPv6 address must be configured through the web interface (either using the IPv4 address or a known other IPv6 address).



The login page features a title bar labeled 'Login'. Below it, there is a 'User ID:' label followed by a dropdown menu currently showing 'Admin'. Underneath is a 'Password:' label followed by an empty text input field. At the bottom left is a 'Log in' button. A vertical text label 'a77ug070' is positioned on the right side of the form.

Figure 2-2. Web User Interface login page

System Status

The **System Status** screen is always present after login giving current status of the library.

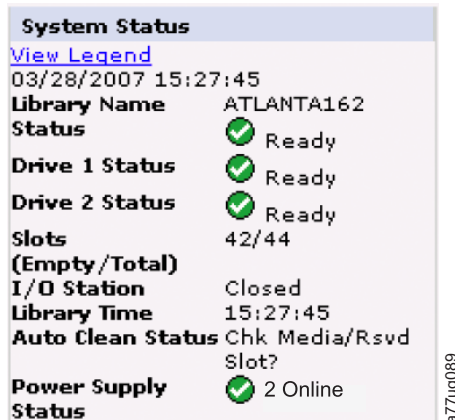


The 2U library System Status screen displays the following information:

System Status	
View Legend	
03/28/2007 15:59:24	
Library Name	BOSTON141
Status	✓ Ready
Drive 1 Status	✓ Ready
Slots (Empty/Total)	22/23
I/O Station	Disabled
Library Time	15:59:24

A vertical text label 'a77ug080' is positioned on the right side of the screen.

Figure 2-3. 2U library System Status screen



The 4U library System Status screen displays the following information:

System Status	
View Legend	
03/28/2007 15:27:45	
Library Name	ATLANTA162
Status	✓ Ready
Drive 1 Status	✓ Ready
Drive 2 Status	✓ Ready
Slots (Empty/Total)	42/44
I/O Station	Closed
Library Time	15:27:45
Auto Clean Status	Chk Media/Rsvd Slot?
Power Supply Status	✓ 2 Online

A vertical text label 'a77ug089' is positioned on the right side of the screen.

Figure 2-4. 4U library System Status screen

Status icons indicate the following conditions.

- The green check mark indicates that the library is fully operational and that no user intervention is required.
- The yellow exclamation point indicates that user intervention is necessary, but that the library is still capable of performing operations. This condition can be caused by a media, library, redundant power supply, power supply fan, or a drive sled problem. To determine which, view the System Status screen.
- The red X indicates that user intervention is required and that the library is not capable of performing operations.

- If Auto Clean is enabled and a cleaning cartridge is **not** present, or if a cleaning cartridge is present, but not in a reserved slot, Auto Clean status will show **Chk Media/Rsvd Slot?** and **Status** will show a green check mark and the words **Media Attention**. The Auto Clean status disappears from the system status screen once Auto Clean has been properly configured. The user will get messages if the cleaning media expires.
- The Power Supply Status will only appear if redundant power is being utilized with a 4U library, and the library was manufactured after March 14, 2008. If a redundant power supply fails, the System Status screen will appear as shown in Figure 2-5.

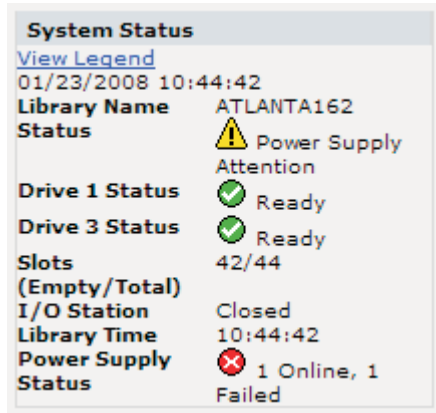


Figure 2-5. 4U library System Status screen showing a power supply failure

Note: If your library has -04 level redundant power supplies (see label on top of power supply), it is normal for the one in “Standby” mode to turn its “Green” LED off. You can test this power supply by pulling the power connector from the other “Active” power supply. The power supply that was in “Standby” mode will now become “Active”, and its “Green” LED should light. If it doesn’t, replace it (refer to “Replacing a Power Supply” on page 10-7).

If your library has -05 level redundant power supplies, the “Green” LED will be ON on both power supplies. If both “Green” LEDs are not ON, replace the failed power supply (refer to “Replacing a Power Supply” on page 10-7).

Web User Interface Help Pages

Each screen on the Web User Interface has an associated Help page. To access a Help page, click on **Help** in the upper right corner of the screen. A new web page will open. Using the left navigation pane, select the desired Help page. To close the Help page, click the red X in the upper right corner of the screen.

Logging out of the Web User Interface

It is important to log out of the Web User Interface before using the Operator Control panel. To log out of the Web User Interface, click **Logout** in the upper right corner of the current screen. If you click the X in the upper right corner of your internet browser window, you will not log out of the Web User Interface.

Chapter 3. Installation Planning

Before installing your library, take time to review the following information.

Determining the Number of Logical Libraries

You can partition the library into as many logical libraries as there are drives in the library.

Basic Guidelines

- Each logical library must contain at least one drive.
- A library configuration of exactly one logical library equals the entire physical library.
- The library issues a warning to the user if media is moved across logical libraries.

Library Sharing

The library's default configuration allows a single application to operate the library through a single control path. Often, it is advantageous to be able to share a single library between heterogeneous (dissimilar) or homogeneous (similar) applications. Some applications (and some servers) do not allow for sharing a library between systems. Configurations can be created that enable the library to process commands from multiple heterogeneous applications and multiple homogeneous applications.

From the library's Web User Interface or Operator Control Panel, the following actions can be performed:

- Configure the library so that it is partitioned into separate logical libraries that independently communicate with separate applications through separate control paths. This configuration requires no special capabilities from the server or application. (For more information, see "Using Multiple Logical Libraries for Library Sharing" on page 3-2.)
- Configure any single logical library (including the entire physical library) so that it is shared by two or more servers that are running the same application. Depending on the capabilities of the server and application, there are several ways to set up this type of configuration. Three typical ways include:
 - Configuring one server (host) to communicate with the library through a single control path; all other servers send requests to that server through a network.
 - Configuring all of the servers to communicate with the library through a single, common control path. This configuration is used in high-availability environments. Multi-initiator configurations are only supported by certain adapters and independent software vendors (ISVs). Check with your ISV.
 - Configuring a single logical library to communicate with multiple servers through multiple control paths. This configuration requires that control paths be added (see "Using Multiple Control Paths" on page 3-2).

Library configuration is not limited to the examples given above. Many configurations are possible, and can be designed according to your business needs. For additional information, refer to your host application documentation.

Using Multiple Logical Libraries for Library Sharing

Multiple logical libraries are an effective way for the library to simultaneously back up and restore data from heterogeneous applications. For example, the library can be partitioned so that it processes:

- Commands from Application A (about Department X) in Logical Library 1
- Commands from Application B (about Department Y) in Logical Library 2

In this configuration, the storage slots and drives in each logical library are dedicated to that library and are not shared among other libraries. Commands issued by the applications travel to the library through two unique control paths. Thus, the data processing for:

- Department X is confined to the storage slots and drives in Logical Library 1
- Department Y is confined to the storage slots and drives in Logical Library 2

Using Multiple Control Paths

In addition to creating multiple logical libraries, any logical library can be configured to have more than one control path. When configuring additional control paths, additional library sharing configurations and availability options are made possible. Access to the logical library is on a first-come, first-served basis and each control path for a logical library can accept commands while the library is in use by another control path. By default, only the first drive in a logical library will be LUN-1 enabled.

For a particular logical library, you can enable as many control paths as there are drives in that logical library.

Using Multiple Control Paths for Path Failover

Command failures and timeouts are costly. You want your library to run smoothly and efficiently. To ensure continued processing, the library offers an optional path failover feature that enables the host device driver to resend the command to an alternate control path for the same logical library. With control path failover installed, the alternate control path can include another HBA, SAN, or library control path drive. The device driver initiates error recovery and continues the operation on the alternate control path without interrupting the application.

The 2U library does not support Control Path Failover and Data Path Failover. As a result, there should be no license key entry for "Path Failover" on the 2U library. Path Failover is a combination of two previous features: Control Path Failover (key entered at the library user interface) and Data Path Failover (key entered at the device driver interface). The Path Failover feature is available for select LTO 4 tape drives. Path Failover is not supported for half height drives.

The Path Failover feature can be installed by the customer.

For more information about using the path failover feature, see the *Dell PowerVault TL4000 Failover Configuration Guide*, included with the library documentation if purchased at point of sale and with the customer kit if purchased later.

Library Partitioning and Element Addressing

Library 4U systems with firmware versions of .80 and higher, and containing at least 2 drives, have the ability to configure two logical libraries (create two partitions). This partitioning has been expanded with the new library firmware and half-high drive integration. Now it is possible to configure 1, 2, 3 or 4 partitions in the 4U library. Additionally the 2U library can now be configured into one or two partitions. Each library must contain at least one drive per logical library (partition). In a partitioned library, the Operator Control Panel (OCP) only reports the status of logical library 1 in the main menu due to space limitations. The user must navigate to the logical libraries status in the OCP to get the information on the additional library partitions.

Partitioning of 2U Libraries

When two half height drives are installed in a 2U library, the library firmware will support partitioning in the same way that the 4U supports partitioning with two full height drives today. The first partition will contain the first magazine and the first drive. The second partition will contain the second magazine and the second drive. The I/O station (if configured as I/O) will be shared, as is done with the partitioned 4U library.

One full height drive is "Drive 1". When using half height drives, the first half height drive position will be called "Drive 1", The second half height drive position will be called "Drive 2."

Partitioning of 4U Libraries

When one or more half height drives are added to a 4U library, the drive naming will change. Currently, the first full height drive is "Drive 1" and the second full height drive is "Drive 2". When you consider that each full height drive slot may contain one or two half height drives, there are four potential drives in the space that used to occupy two. As a result, the first half height drive position, or the first full-high drive position, will be called "Drive 1". The second half height drive position will be called "Drive 2". The third half height drive position, or the second full height drive position, will be called "Drive 3". The fourth half height drive position will be called "Drive 4".

Mixing of Drives

The library will support a mix of full height and half height drives in the same physical library and the same logical library. They will support a mix of Gen 3 and Gen 4 drives in the same physical library and the same logical library. They will also support a mix of SCSI, SAS, and Fibre Channel in the same physical library and the same logical library; however, mixing drive interface types in the same logical library is not recommended.

Configuration of a 1 Partition System

A one partition system configured for a 4U library contains any and all drives present in any drive positions, and it will contain all four magazines.

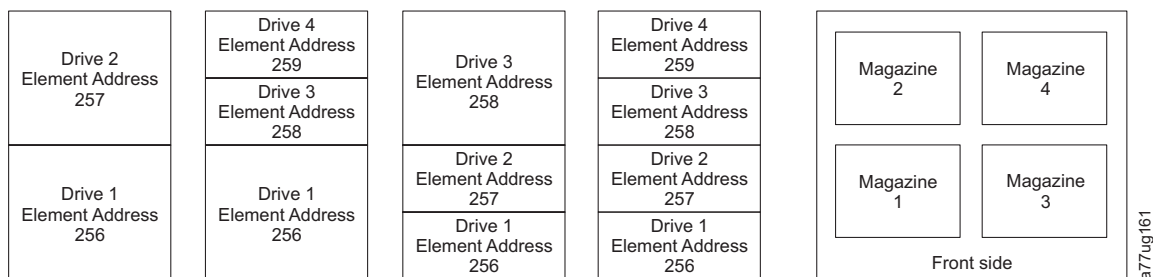


Figure 3-1. Configuration of a One Partition System

Configuration of a 2 Partition System

A two partition system must have at least two drives installed. One drive must be installed in either drive position 1 or drive position 2, and another drive must be installed in either drive position 3 or drive position 4. Partition 1 will contain any drives in drive position 1 and drive position 2. Partition 1 will also contain magazine 1 and magazine 2. Partition 2 will contain any drives in drive position 3 and drive position 4. Partition 2 will also contain magazine 3 and magazine 4.

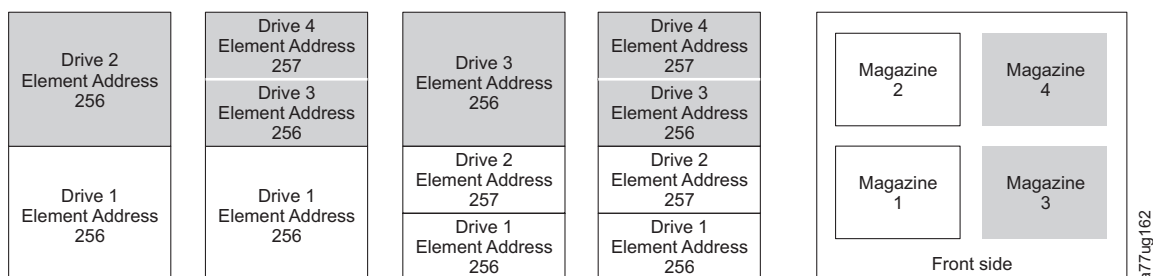


Figure 3-2. Configuration of a Two Partition System

Configuration of a 3 Partition System

A three partition system must have at least three drives installed. A drive must be installed in drive position 1, another drive must be installed in drive position 2, and another drive must be installed in either drive position 3 or drive position 4. Partition 1 will contain the first drive and the first magazine. Partition 2 will contain the second drive and the second magazine. Partition 3 will contain any drives in drive position 3 and drive position 4. Partition 3 will also contain magazine 3 and magazine 4.

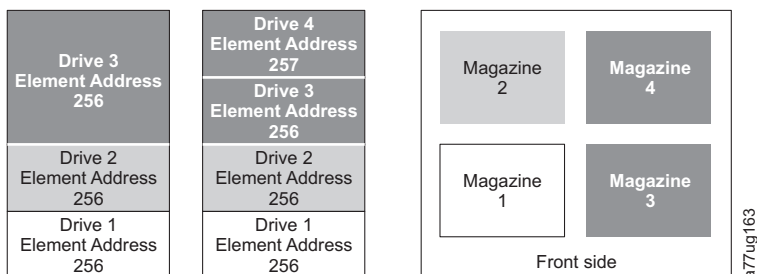


Figure 3-3. Configuration of a Three Partition System

Configuration of a 4 Partition System

A four partition system must have four drives. Each partition will contain one drive and one magazine.

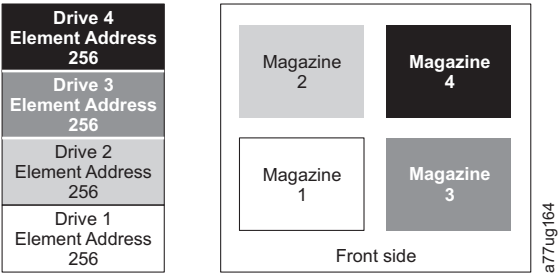


Figure 3-4. Configuration of a Four Partition System

SCSI Element Addressing

Every logical library starts at the first drive slot with the current assigned element start address (default value 256). It will be incremented from the bottom to the top slots for every drive slot. There is one exception to this addressing scheme to accommodate libraries currently in the field. A 4U library which contains only full height drives will continue to have the addresses assignments 256 and 257, thus causing no interruptions to their operation. Drive slots will still be incremented by 1 for each drive slot position.

Note: Exchanging drives with different form factors will result in the library needing to be reconfigured.

4U Unit with only FH drives
(1 logical library)

SCSI Element	Slot
257	4
	3
256	2
	1

4U Unit with FH and HH drives
(1 logical library)

SCSI Element	Slot
258	4
	3
257	2
256	1

a77ug165

Figure 3-5. Examples of SCSI Element Addressing

The SCSI specification does not allow gaps in the SCSI element addressing. Special handling is needed for empty drive slots to fulfill the specification. Also drives which are temporarily removed need to have their address preserved to not confuse the attached host and host application. Generally only drives are reported which are currently physically available or temporarily removed. Empty (unused) slots which are located at the bottom or the top should not be reported, with an

exception in case of a “removed” condition. A drive slot which does not contain a drive and has a position between used slots needs to be reported as a SCSI element. To signal the host application that this slot is not usable, its ACCESS bit will be disabled.

Logical Unit Number (LUN) Scanning

The library uses a single SCSI or Loop ID per drive and dual LUNs to control the tape drive (LUN 0) and library accessor (LUN 1). The library requires a Host Bus Adapter (HBA) that supports LUN scanning. If it is not enabled, your host system will not scan beyond LUN 0 and will fail to discover the library. It will only see the tape drive.

Important: Some HBAs, such as RAID controllers, do not support LUN scanning.

Host Interfaces

The 2U library and the 4U library can be attached to servers using the following interfaces:

- SCSI (LVD Ultrium 160)
- Serial Attached SCSI (SAS)
- Fibre Channel

Table 3-1. Host Drive Interface Support

Drive	SCSI (LVD Ultra 160)	SAS	FC
Ultrium 3 FH	X		X
Ultrium 3 HH		X	
Ultrium 4 FH		X*	X
Ultrium 4 HH		X	
Note: * = Dual Port SAS			

SCSI Interface

Note: Although the LVD hardware in the library is capable of operating in single-ended (SE) mode, SE operation is not recommended.

The library supports SCSI LVD attachments by using SCSI cables with 68-pin, HD-connectors. SCSI adapters must be properly terminated.

Before installing the SCSI cables, inspect all cables for damage. Do not install a cable if it is damaged. Report the damage immediately by contacting Dell customer care.

The maximum allowable length of your bus cabling depends on the type of SCSI bus that you use (LVD).

- For a server with an LVD SCSI bus:
 - Use a maximum system-to-device cable length of 10 m (33 ft) when attaching to the host interface board (SCSI) and one or two daisy-chained drives.
 - Use a maximum system-to-device cable length of 5 m (17 ft) when attaching to the host interface board (SCSI) and three to six daisy-chained drives.

Note: For maximum performance, it is recommended to have a maximum of one drive per SCSI bus.

- Only use the maximum system-to-device cable length of 25 m (82 ft) when attaching directly to one device (a point to point interconnection).

Physical Characteristics of the SCSI Interface

The library operates as a set of SCSI-3 devices. The Ultrium Tape Drives attach to servers using an LVD Ultra160 SCSI interface. Each SCSI drive sled uses shielded, HD68-pin connectors, and can attach directly to a 2-byte-wide SCSI cable.

Any combination of up to two initiators (servers) and up to four targets (devices) is allowed on a single SCSI bus if the following conditions are met:

- The SCSI bus is terminated properly at each end
- Cable restrictions are followed according to the SCSI-3 specification

Under the SCSI-3 protocol, this type of attachment allows cable lengths of up to 25 m (81 ft) with the appropriate cable and terminator. The table below gives the maximum bus length between terminators for the LVD interface.

Table 3-2. Maximum bus length between terminators

Type of Interconnection	Maximum Bus Length Between Terminators (in meters)
Point-to-point (1 server and 1 drive)	25
Multi-drop/daisy-chain (1 server and multiple drives)	12 (LVD)
Note: The maximum bus lengths stated in this table include the internal length of the bus.	

For maximum performance, multiple SCSI buses may be required (see “Using Multiple SCSI Buses”), and Ultrium Tape Drives must be the only target devices that are active on the bus.

Note: For maximum performance, the quantity of tape drives that you can attach to one SCSI bus is limited, and is based on the type of bus that you have and the amount of data compression achieved. Ultra160 SCSI buses have a bandwidth of 160 MB per second. The table below lists the types of SCSI buses and gives the recommended maximum quantity of drives that you can attach.

Table 3-3. Recommended maximum quantity of drives per SCSI bus

Type of Drive	Ultra 160 SCSI Bus
LVD Ultrium 3	1 drive at 2:1 compression

Using Multiple SCSI Buses

The library has two SCSI connectors for each tape drive in the library. Each drive can be daisy-chained using a SCSI bus jumper.

Removal of any jumpers will create a SCSI bus for each drive installed in your library for attachment to multiple servers or to multiple SCSI adapter cards on one server. Remember that each SCSI bus must be terminated. Multiple SCSI buses may be required for maximum performance, depending on the application and data compression ratio. Note, however, that library (Medium Changer) control is required on at least one SCSI bus.

The Medium Changer device is required to be addressed via LUN 1 of the lowest-numbered drive position of each logical library. The Medium Changer device may additionally be addressed via LUN 1 of other drives in any logical library.

Any bus containing a Medium Changer device via LUN 1 of a drive is referred to as a control and data path. Any other bus is referred to as a data path. For information about control paths, see “Using Multiple Control Paths” on page 3-2.

Terminating the Bus

The SCSI bus and all of the wires in the SCSI cable must be properly terminated according to the SCSI standard.

You can plug an external terminator into one of the SCSI connectors. A terminator must be installed on the last device on each end of a string of multiple devices. A terminator is included with each SCSI Ultrium Tape Drive.

SCSI Differential - LVD

LVD tape devices support a bus length of 25 meters (82 ft.) point-to-point, and 12 meters (39 ft.) using multi-drop interconnection (daisy-chaining). For each daisy-chained device, the maximum cable length must be reduced by 0.5 meters (1.6 ft.).

Important: A faster bus does not imply that an attached device will support that data rate, but that multiple devices can operate on the bus at that maximum speed. For a detailed table of SCSI terms and related specifications, refer to the SCSI Trade Association Web site at <http://www.scsita.org/terms/scsiterms.html>. To ensure best performance, if possible, avoid daisy-chaining.

SAS Interface

A drive sled with a SAS (Serial Attached SCSI) interface can be linked directly to controllers. SAS is a performance improvement over traditional SCSI because SAS enables multiple devices (up to 128) of different sizes and types to be connected simultaneously with thinner and longer cables; its full-duplex signal transmission supports 3.0 Gb/s. In addition, SAS drives can be hot-plugged.

SAS drives will auto-negotiate speed. There are no configurable topologies thus no feature switches associated with SAS. The SAS Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4 Half height drive sleds are single ported and can only be attached to one host. While the Ultrium 4 Full height drive is dual ported and can be attached to a maximum of two hosts, the intention of the second port is for redundancy for failover rather than sharing. Sharing between these two hosts is limited to active/passive cluster failover. LAN-free drive sharing is not supported. Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4 SAS drive sleds use the SFF-8088 connection at the drive sled end and SFF-8088 or SFF-8470 at the host adapter end. Initially, only point-to-point connections are supported.

Fibre Channel Interface

Fibre Channel allows for an active intelligent interconnection scheme, called a Fabric, to connect devices. Everything between the ports on Fibre Channel is called the Fabric. The Fabric is most often a switch or series of switches that takes the responsibility for routing.

The library allows the selection of the following Fibre channel port behaviors:

- LN Port: (default setting) - an automatic configuration that tries arbitrated loop first, then switched fabric
- L Port - arbitrated loop
- N Port - point to point protocol in a switched fabric topology

Cables and Speeds

Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4 Fibre Channel tape drives use LC duplex fiber optics cables.

The maximum distances that the library supports on a Fibre Channel link is determined by the link speed, the type of fiber (50-micron or 62.5-micron), and the device to which the library is attached.

If the library attaches to an HBA (Host Bus Adapter), refer to the distances that are supported by the HBA. If the library attaches to a switch, the supported distances are:

- For a 50-micron cable:
 - 1-Gbit link speed = up to 500 m (1640 ft)
 - 2-Gbit link speed = up to 300 m (984 ft)
 - 4-Gbit link speed = up to 150 m (492 ft)
- For a 62.5-micron cable:
 - 1-Gbit link speed = up to 175 m (574 ft)
 - 2-Gbit link speed = up to 150 m (492 ft)
 - 4-Gbit link speed = up to 70 m (230 ft)

The library uses 50-micron cables internally. Therefore, you must use a 50-micron cable to attach to the library's port. To attach to a 62.5-micron SAN, you must attach the 50-micron cable to an active port, such as a port on a switch.

Using Zoning to Isolate Devices and Enhance Security

For security reasons, it is important to limit the devices that a server or servers can recognize or access. Also, some performance configurations and SAN configurations can result in a device being seen multiple times from the same server. For example, if you have two HBAs from the same server connected to an Ultrium Tape Drive in the library, the drive will be detected and appear as two logical devices. That is, there will be two special files for one physical device. Zoning can address these issues.

Zoning allows you to partition your SAN into logical groupings of devices so that each group is isolated from the other and can only access the devices in its own group. Two types of zoning exist: hardware zoning and software zoning. Hardware zoning is based on physical fabric port number. Software zoning is defined with a World Wide Node Name (WWNN) or World Wide Port Name (WWPN). While zoning can be reconfigured without causing an outage, some zoning configurations can become complicated. The advantage of the library's WWNN implementation is that you can avoid the exposure of introducing zoning errors because you do not have to change the zoning configuration if a drive needs service or replacement.

Sharing on a Storage Area Network

With Storage Area Network (SAN) components, the possibilities for connecting multiple systems and multiple drives have increased. Not all software and systems are designed to share drives. Before you install a drive that would allow two systems to share it, check that the systems and their software support sharing. If your software does not support sharing, note that Fibre Channel switches have a

zoning capability to form a SAN partition. For systems that do not cooperate, use zoning to prevent the systems from sharing the same drive. You can remove zoned partitions as you upgrade software and system levels.

Chapter 4. Installation and Configuration

Note: Review the information in "Installation Planning" before installing your library.

To install a desktop or rack mounted 2U library or 4U library, perform the procedures in this chapter in the order they are presented.

Installing Your Library

Complete these procedures to install your library hardware.

1. "Using the Library Configuration Form."
2. "Choosing a Location."
3. "Unpacking the Library" on page 4-2.
4. "Verifying the Shipment" on page 4-2.
5. "Installing the Library Foot Pads (for Desktop Installation ONLY)" on page 4-3.
6. "Removing and Storing the Shipping Lock" on page 4-4.
7. "Rackmounting the Library (for Rack Installation ONLY)" on page 4-6.
8. "Connecting the Host Interface Cable" on page 4-12.
9. "Connecting a Power Cord" on page 4-13.

Using the Library Configuration Form

Before beginning the installation and configuration of your library, make a copy of the Appendix F, "Library Configuration Form," on page F-1. Enter library information (such as serial numbers, types of drives, etc.) and configuration settings on the Library Configuration Form and store in a safe location for future reference. Be sure to update this form any time changes are made to your library hardware or configuration.

Choosing a Location

Choose a location that meets the following criteria:

Table 4-1. Location criteria

Criteria	Definition
Room temperature	10° - 35° C (50° - 95° F)
Power source	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• AC power voltage: 100-127 VAC; 200-240 VAC (4 - 2 A) <p>Note: The 4U library requires two separate power sources to implement redundant power.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Line frequency: 50-60 Hz <p>Place the library near an AC outlet. The AC power cord is the product's main AC disconnect device and must be easily accessible at all times.</p>
Air quality	The library should be placed in an area with minimal sources of particulate contamination. Avoid areas near frequently used doors and walkways, stacks of supplies that collect dust, printers, and smoke-filled rooms. Excessive dust and debris can damage tapes and tape drives.
Humidity	15-80 % RH non-condensing

Table 4-1. Location criteria (continued)

Criteria	Definition
Clearance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Back: Minimum of 15.4 cm (6 inches) • Front: Minimum of 30.8 cm (12 inches) • Sides: Minimum of 5.08 cm (2 inches)
Rack requirements	<p>Standard 19-inch rack with:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2U (63.5 mm/3.5 in.) of clearance for a 2U library • 4U (177.8 mm/7 in.) of clearance for a 4U library <p>Rackmounting the library is optional.</p>

Unpacking the Library

Note: If the temperature in the room where the library will be installed varies by 15° C (30° F) from the room where the library was stored, allow the library to acclimate to the surrounding environment for at least 12 hours before unpacking it from the shipping container.

1. Before you begin, clear a work surface to unpack the library.
2. Open the shipping container and carefully remove the shipping materials from the top of the library. Remove the accessory package and set it aside.

Important: Once the drive is unpacked, **save and store** the packaging materials for future moves or shipping.

3. Lift the library out of the carton and remove the bag from the library. Remove the foam cushion from the back of the library. Save the packaging materials for future use.

Important: Do not place the library on the front panel or the rear panel as this may damage the library. The display should NOT be touched during the removal of the unit from the packaging.

4. Remove all clear plastic protective sheets from the library.



Figure 4-1. Removing the plastic protective sheets from the library

Verifying the Shipment

Verify that the following items are included in your library shipment:

- With every library:
 - Power cord
 - Cleaning cartridge

- Bar code labels
- Foot pads (for desktop installation)
- With every library containing a SCSI drive:
 - SCSI terminator (one per SCSI drive)
 - SCSI library-to-host cable (if ordered by customer)
- With every library containing a Fibre Channel drive:
 - Fibre Channel library-to-host/switch cable (if ordered by customer)
- With every library containing a SAS drive:
 - SAS library-to-host cable (if ordered by customer)
- Rack Mount Kit

Installing the Library Foot Pads (for Desktop Installation ONLY)

Important: Operating your library on a flat surface without foot pads may damage your library or cause it not to function properly..

Six foot pads must be installed on the bottom of the library before the library can be used as a desktop unit. If you intend to install your library in a rack, skip this step and proceed to “Removing and Storing the Shipping Lock” on page 4-4.

To install the library foot pads:

1. Being very careful, lay the library on its side.
2. Peel the adhesive from the back of each foot pad.
3. Install the foot pads on the bottom of the library enclosure by pressing each foot into one of the six areas (**1**) as shown in the figure below.

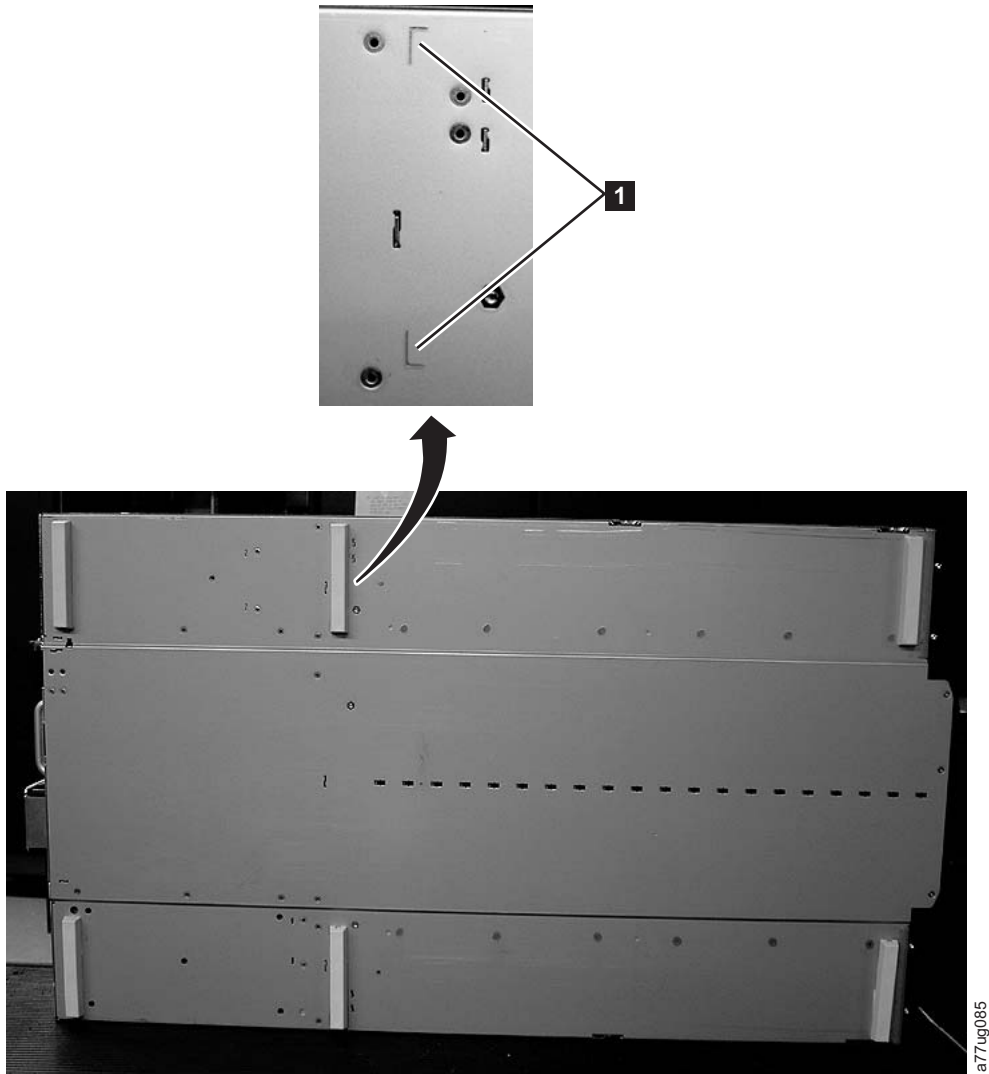


Figure 4-2. Installing foot pads on the bottom of the library enclosure

4. Carefully return the library to an upright position.

Important: Do not place any objects on top of the library.

Removing and Storing the Shipping Lock

Important: The shipping lock, which prevents the library accessor from moving during shipment, **must be removed before the library is powered ON.**

The shipping lock is held in place with a label and is located in the top center of the library. After the shipping lock is removed, it should be stored on the right side of the back panel of the library for future use.

To remove and store the shipping lock:

1. Remove the blue label (**2**) that is securing the lock (**1**) to the top of the library, then remove the lock (see Figure 4-3 on page 4-5).



Figure 4-3. Shipping lock and label

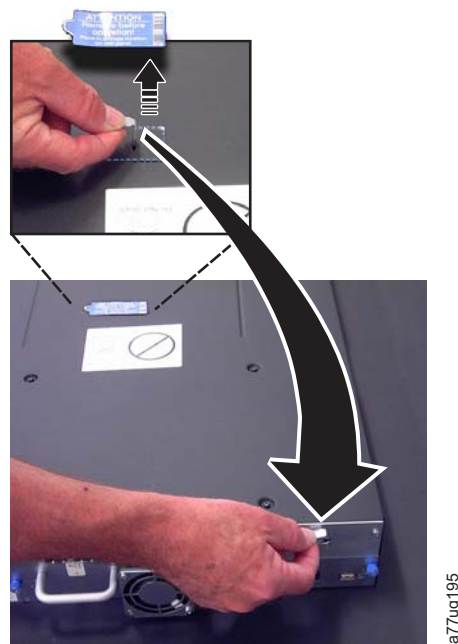


Figure 4-4. Removing the Shipping lock and label

2. Store the lock (**1**) and label (**2**) on the rear panel of the library as shown in Figure 4-5 on page 4-6.



Figure 4-5. Library shipping lock and label storage location on rear panel of library

Rackmounting the Library (for Rack Installation ONLY)

Attention: If you haven't removed the shipping lock, complete this first before rackmounting your library. See "Removing and Storing the Shipping Lock" on page 4-4.

The 2U library and the 4U library are easily installed into a standard 19-inch rack system. A standard 19-inch rack system contains multiple mounting locations called EIA units as defined by the Electronics Industries Association. Each EIA unit contains three square or round holes used to mount rack designed equipment. These units are often referred to as "U"s, thus the 2U library requires 2 EIA units (or 6 holes) of space; the 4U library takes 4 EIA units (or 12 holes) of space. Each unit is separated by a very small space. See Figure 2-5 for an example of how to count EIA units. The 2U library requires 2U (3.5 in.) of space. The 4U library requires 4U (7 in.) of space.

If you are not rackmounting your library, skip this procedure and go to "Connecting the Host Interface Cable" on page 4-12.

Important: A 2U library weighs 15.59 kg (34.37 lbs.) with one drive and without media. A 4U library weighs 21.32 kg (47 lbs.) with one drive and without media.

To reduce the risk of personal injury or damage to the library:

1. observe local health and safety requirements and guidelines for manual material handling,
2. obtain adequate assistance to lift and stabilize the library during installation or removal, and
3. always remove all cartridges to reduce the overall weight of the library.

To install your library in a rack, perform the following steps.

1. Verify that your rack kit includes the following contents (see Figure 4-6):
 - Packaged in plastic material:
 - 2 rails (not shown)
 - 2 mounting brackets (**1**)
 - Packaged in the small bag with no label:
 - 1 T10 Torx wrench (**5**)
 - 2 U-shaped anchors (**4**)
 - 4 small screws for securing the anchors and brackets (**6**)
 - 2 large screws to secure the mounting brackets to the rack (**7**)
 - Packaged in the small bag with "Round Hole" on the label: 9 screws to be used on racks with round holes. (**2**)
 - Packaged in the small bag with "Square Hole" on the label: 9 screws to be used on racks with square holes. (**3**)

Note: Eight screws are needed for the installation. One additional screw is provided for security.

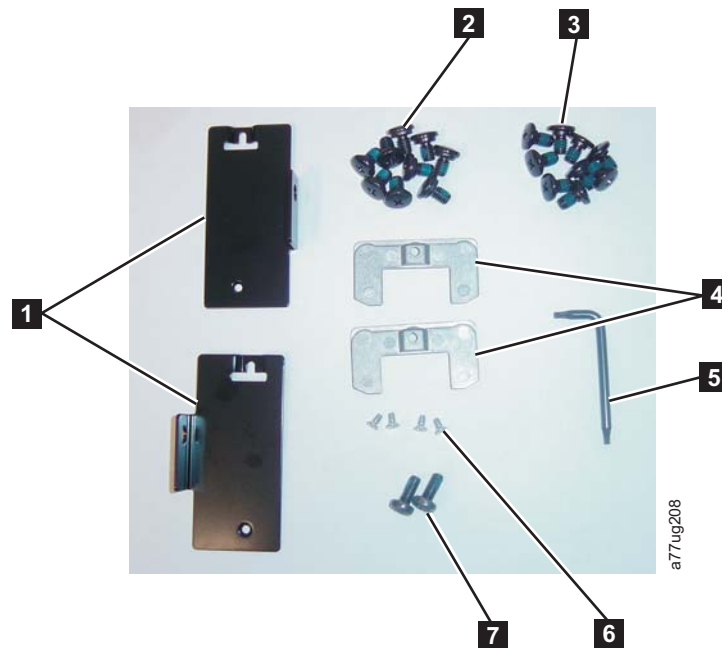


Figure 4-6. Rack Kit Mounting hardware

2. Determine the location in your rack for your library to be installed and, using a pencil, mark the location on each vertical rail in your rack.

Note: A 2U library requires 2U (3.5 in.= two EIA) of rack space. A 4U library requires 4U (7 in. = four EIA) of rack space

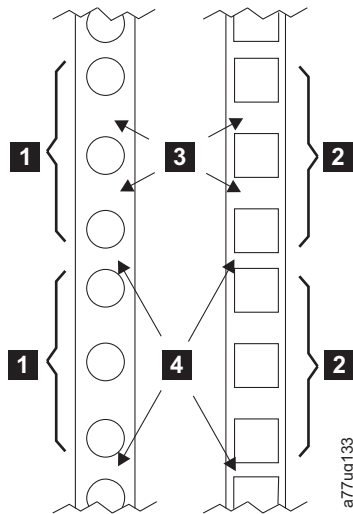


Figure 4-7. Examples of EIA units for round hole and square hole installations

1	Two EIA units for round hole and square hole installation	3	Wide Gaps within the EIA unit
2		4	Narrow Gaps between EIA units

3. Remove the adhesive security tape on the backside of the rails. Using the screws for your rack type (round holes or square holes) and a #2 Phillips screwdriver and ensuring that the flange on each rail points toward each other to form a shelf, secure one rail to each side of the rack in your chosen rack location. Secure both the front and back of each rail to the rack, then tighten all 8 screws. The narrow end of each rail goes to the rear of the rack. The rails extend to fit a variety of rack depths. Each rail requires 2 EIA units of rack space (**1** in Figure 4-8).

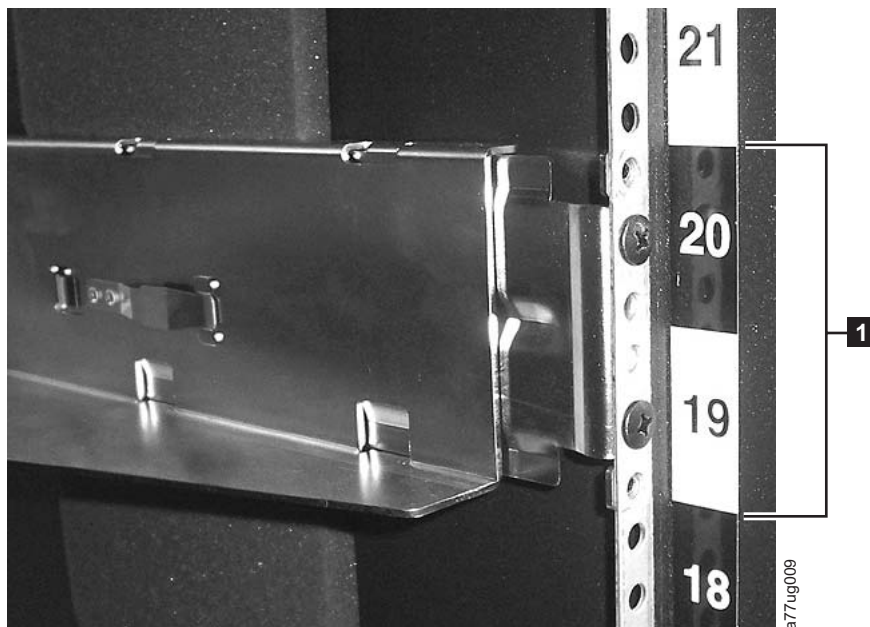


Figure 4-8. Rear view of a rack showing the narrow part of the rail

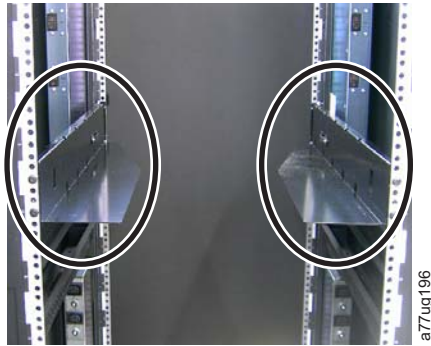


Figure 4-9. Front view of a rack showing the rails installed

4. Using the Torx wrench included in your shipment, remove the screws (**1**) as shown in Figure 4-10. Screw locations on the 4U library are similar.

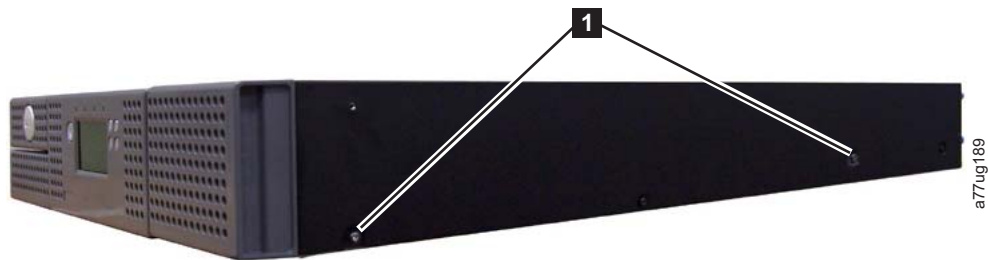


Figure 4-10. 2U library side screws to remove

5. Install the library rack anchors (**2**) as shown in Figure 4-11 on each side of your library using the longer counter-sunk screws included in the rack kit.

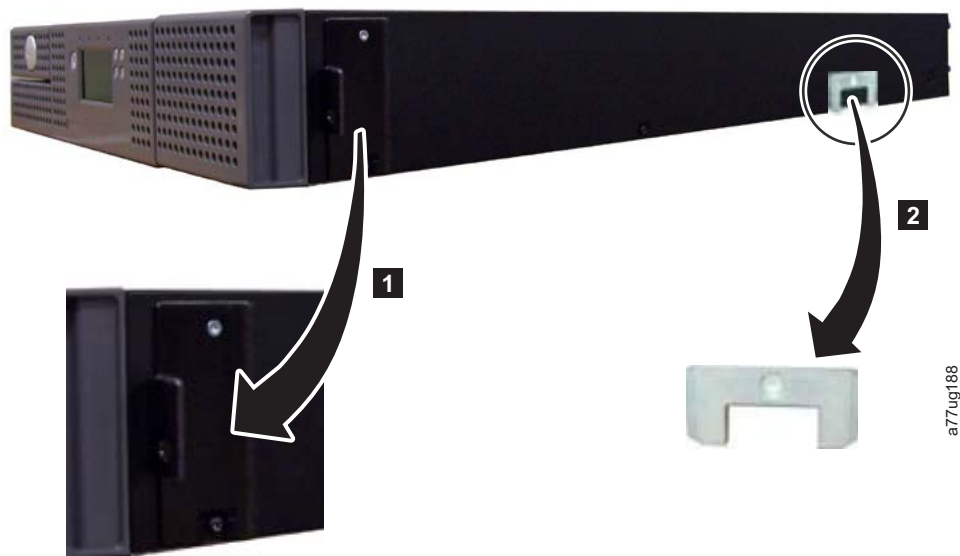


Figure 4-11. 2U library rack anchors and mounting brackets

6. Install the library mounting brackets (**1**) as shown on the 2U library on each side of the library using the screw that was removed from your library and an

additional short, counter-sunk screw included in the rack kit. (The 4U rack anchors and mounting brackets are similar.)

7. With library rack anchors and mounting brackets installed, slide the library onto the rails (as shown in Figure 4-12 and Figure 4-13). When the library stops, gently push the library to lock the anchors installed on each side of the library to the rails and until the mounting brackets are flush with the vertical rack rails.



Figure 4-12. Sliding the 2U library into the rack



Figure 4-13. Sliding the 4U library into the rack

8. Using a #2 Phillips screwdriver, secure the library to the rack (see Figure 4-14 on page 4-11 for a 2U library; see Figure 4-15 on page 4-11 for a 4U library) by placing a screw in the center hole of each mounting bracket and tightening them (**1**).



a77ug178

1

Figure 4-14. Securing the 2U library to the rack



a77ug175

1

Figure 4-15. Securing the 4U library to the rack

Connecting the Host Interface Cable

To connect the host interface cables to the library:

1. It is recommended that you shut down and turn OFF the associated server. Turn OFF all attached devices. Remove the power cables from the server and all attached accessories.

Important: Failure to remove the power cords from these devices before connecting the host interface cable could result in damage to the library.

2. For a SCSI library, attach one end of the host interface cable to one of the connectors on the back panel of the library (**1**). For a Fibre Channel library, attach one end of the host interface cable to the connector on the back panel of the library (**4**). For a Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) connected library, attach the host end of the SAS cable to the SAS or Mini-SAS (SFF-8088) HBA (**2**). Full height drives will have dual SAS or Mini-SAS connectors. Half height drives will have one SAS connector. Unused SAS connectors do not need to be terminated.

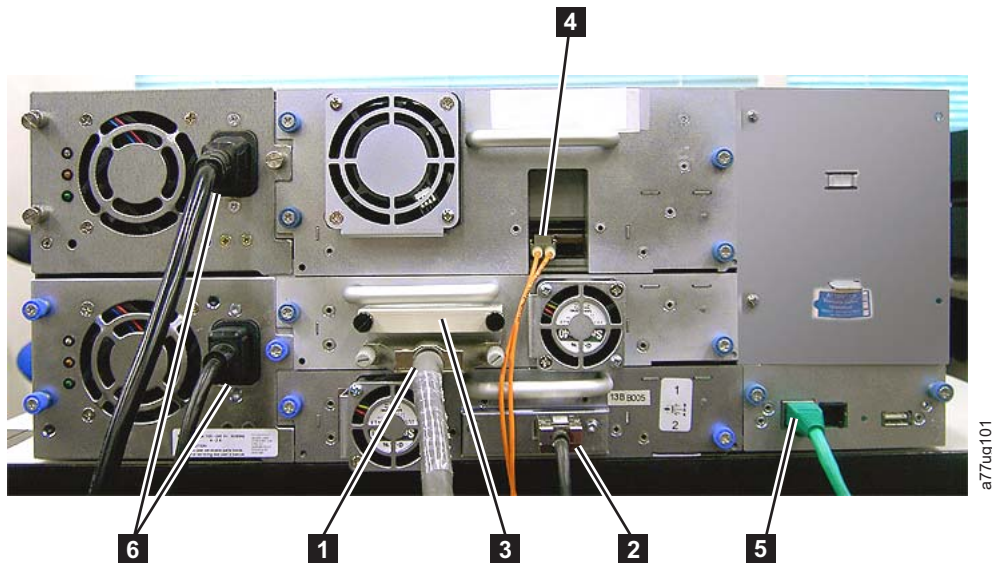


Figure 4-16. Attaching SCSI ([1]), Fibre Channel ([4]), and SAS ([2]) cables to the 4U library. THE CONFIGURATION SHOWN IN THIS FIGURE IS USED FOR EXAMPLE ONLY. THIS CONFIGURATION IS NOT RECOMMENDED. HALF HEIGHT SCSI DRIVES ARE NOT SUPPORTED.

3. Attach the other end of the host interface cable as follows:
 - For a SCSI library, connect the host interface cable to the connector on the SCSI host bus adapter or to the connector on the previous device on the SCSI bus. Attach the terminator (**3** in “Connecting the Host Interface Cable”) to the remaining SCSI connector on the back panel of the library, if the library is the last or only device on the SCSI bus. Otherwise, attach one end of a SCSI cable to the remaining port and the other end to the next device on the SCSI bus. Make sure that the last device on the SCSI bus is properly terminated.

Note: Cables and terminators supporting Ultra160 should be used.

Note: The host bus adapter should be LVD SCSI. A single-ended (SE) SCSI host bus adapter will work, but will severely degrade performance,

and limit cable length. If there are any SE devices on the same SCSI bus, the entire SCSI bus will negotiate down to SE speed and severely degrade performance.

- For a Fibre Channel library, connect the host interface cable to the host or to a switch.
 - For a SAS library, connect the drive using a host interface cable to the host HBA. You can connect to either ports if you have a dual port configuration. Unused SAS connectors do not need termination.
4. Plug the network ethernet cable (**5** in “Connecting the Host Interface Cable” on page 4-12) into the ethernet port on the back panel of the library. If the ethernet connection is directly attached to a server or laptop, a crossover ethernet cable may be required.

Note: It is the customer’s responsibility to supply the crossover ethernet cable if one is required.

Connecting a Power Cord

Attention: This product can ONLY be used with an approved power cord for your specific geographic region. Use of an unapproved power cord may result in:

- not meeting individual country specific safety requirements;
- overheating with potential personal injury and/or property damage; and
- a fracture resulting in the internal contacts being exposed, which potentially could subject the user to a shock hazard.

For every power supply in the library, complete the following steps.

1. Remove the protective label from the power receptacle on your library.

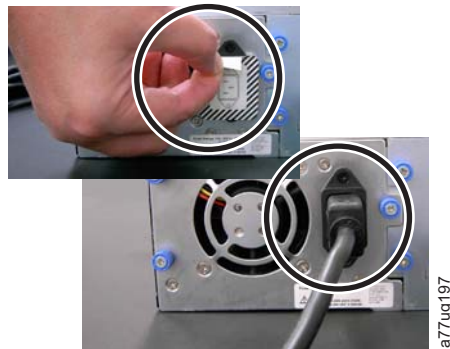


Figure 4-17. Removing the protective label from the power receptacle

2. Plug one end of the power cord (**4** in “Connecting the Host Interface Cable” on page 4-12) into each power supply connector on the back panel of the library.
3. Plug the other end of each power cord into the nearest properly grounded power outlet. Use separate power sources for each power supply for redundant power.

Attention: To disconnect all power from the library, remove the power cord from each outlet. The power button removes power from portions of the library and the drives, but the power supplies still have AC power at their inputs.

4. Remove the protective plastic on the exterior surfaces of the library.

5. Turn ON the library using the power button. Check the Operator Control Panel display to make sure the library is receiving power. If it is not, check the power connections and your power source. During the Power-On Self Test (POST), all four LEDs are illuminated briefly, followed by a flashing Ready LED. When the initialization sequence is complete, the Home screen (see “Power-ON Display” on page 2-2) will be displayed.

Configuring Your Library

Note: Review the information in “Installation Planning” before configuring your library.

The library can be configured using the Operator Control Panel and/or the Web User Interface. The recommended method for configuring your library is using the Web User Interface.

For complete detailed configuration information on all of the functions available on your library using both the Operator Control Panel and the Web User Interface, see Chapter 5, “Operations,” on page 5-1. For default library settings, see “Configure: Restore Defaults” on page 5-24

Choosing Your Configuration Method

If you choose to use the factory defaults for your library configuration, go to “Using Factory Defaults as Your Configuration” on page 4-15.

If you choose to use the Web User Interface for configuring your library, go to “Configuring Your Library using the Web User Interface” on page 4-15.

If you choose to use the Operator Control Panel for configuring your library, go to “Configure Menu” on page 5-18 for information on configuring the following items:

- Logical Libraries
- Library Settings
- Drive(s)
- Network
- Set Access PIN
- Set Date and Time
- Path Failover

To complete the configuration of your library, the following items will have to be accessed from the Web User Interface:

- Encryption (see “Configure Library: Encryption” on page 5-41)
- User Access Information (see “Configure Library: User Access” on page 5-46)
- Logs and Traces (see “Configure Library: Logs & Traces” on page 5-48)
- Event Notification Information (see “Configure Library: Event Notification” on page 5-48)
- Key Path Diagnostic (see “Service Library: Perform Key Path Diagnostics” on page 5-53)
- Updating Firmware (see “Service Library: Upgrade Firmware” on page 5-54)

Using Factory Defaults as Your Configuration

The table below shows the main default library settings. If you wish to use the defaults, no other changes need to be made before using your library

Item	Default Setting
Logical Libraries	1
Active Slots	Maximum
I/O Slots	Enabled
DHCP	Enabled
Internet Protocol	IPv4 Only
Bar Code Label Length	8
Library Mode	Random
AutoClean	Disabled
Encryption	Application Managed Encryption (AME)

For a full list of factory defaults, see “Configure: Restore Defaults” on page 5-24.

Configuring Your Library using the Web User Interface

To configure your library using the Web User Interface, complete the following procedures:

1. “Entering Network Settings using the Operator Control Panel”
2. “Logging on to the Web User Interface” on page 4-17
3. “Verifying/Updating Firmware” on page 4-17
4. “Choosing General Library Settings” on page 4-18
5. “Choosing the Number of Logical Libraries for Your Library” on page 4-20
6. “Entering Path Failover Feature Activation Key” on page 4-21
7. “Setting Up Encryption” on page 4-21
8. “Choosing Drive(s) Interface Identification/Settings” on page 4-23
9. “Entering Library Network Settings” on page 4-24
10. “Entering User Access Information using the Web User Interface” on page 4-26
11. “Entering Date and Time using the Web User Interface” on page 4-26
12. “Configuring Logs and Traces using the Web User Interface” on page 4-27
13. “Entering Event Notification Information using the Web User Interface” on page 4-27
14. “Running Key Path Diagnostic for Testing Encryption Configuration” on page 4-28
15. “Restoring Factory Default Settings using the Web User Interface” on page 4-28
16. “Logging out of the Web User Interface” on page 2-7
17. “Setting the Operator Control Panel Access PIN using the Operator Control Panel” on page 4-29

Entering Network Settings using the Operator Control Panel

Static library network settings must be entered using the Operator Control Panel before the library can be accessed remotely using the Web User Interface. If your

system is serviced by DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server, the network parameters will be automatically set. Once remote access has been established, you can complete the configuration of your library.

1. Access the Configure menu using the Operator Control Panel.
 - a. From the screen that shows the library logo (Home screen), press either the UP or DOWN button to get to the Main Menu.
 - b. Press the DOWN button to select **Configure**.
 - c. Press the ENTER button to display the **Configure** menu.
2. Press the DOWN button to highlight the **Network** menu.
3. Press the SELECT button to display the **Network** screen.
4. Select IP STACK to change Internet Protocols. Choose **IPv4 only**, **IPv6 only**, or **IPv4 & IPv6**.
5. If you do **not** want to select DHCP as your library network setting, skip this step and proceed to the next step. If you want to select DHCP as your library network setting, complete the following steps:
 - a. Press the SELECT button to highlight the **DHCP** field.
 - b. Press the DOWN button to select **ON**.
 - c. Press the SELECT button to apply your selection.
 - d. Skip to Step 7.
6. Press the DOWN button to select **IP Address**.
 - a. Press the SELECT button to highlight the **IP Address** field.
 - b. Press the UP or DOWN button to select the digit(s) of your library's IP Address.
 - c. Press the SELECT button to highlight the next digit(s) in your IP Address.
 - d. After entering the final digits, press the SELECT button to apply your entries.
7. Press the DOWN button to select **Netmask**.
 - a. Press the SELECT button to highlight the **Netmask** field.
 - b. Press the UP or DOWN button to select the digit(s) in your library's Netmask address.
 - c. Press the SELECT button to highlight the next digit(s) in your library's Netmask address.
 - d. After entering the final digit(s) in your Netmask address, press the SELECT button to apply your entries.
8. Press the DOWN button to select **Gateway**.
 - a. Press the SELECT button to highlight the **Gateway** field.
 - b. Press the UP or DOWN button to select the digit(s) in your library's Gateway address.
 - c. Press the SELECT button to apply your entries.
9. Press the DOWN button to select **Ethernet**.
 - a. Press the DOWN button to highlight the Ethernet field.
 - b. Press the SELECT button to change the Ethernet setting.
 - c. Press the DOWN button to select a new setting.
 - d. Press the SELECT button to apply the new setting.
 - e. Press the DOWN button and select one of the following:
 - **Save** - to apply your new configuration.
 - **Cancel** - to cancel all of your entries and leave the settings as they were.

10. Press the CANCEL button until the Home screen displays.
11. Press the CANCEL button to return to the home screen.
12. Power cycle the library to initialize your configuration.

Logging on to the Web User Interface

To complete the configuration of your library using the Web User Interface, follow the steps below.

1. Return to the Home screen on the Operator Control Panel.
2. On your host computer, open Internet Explorer.
3. In the browser address field, enter your library's IP Address. For DHCP, enter...
 - a. For DHCP, use the Operator Control Panel to determine the IP Address assigned to your library. Navigate to **Monitor** → **Library** → **Identity**. Scroll down to IP Address and make note of the address. Enter the IP Address in your internet browser address field to access your library with the Web User Interface.
 - b. For IPv4 or Dual Stack IPv4 + IPv6, enter your library's static IP Address using the 0.0.0.0 format (four octets).
 - c. For IPv6, enter your library's static IP Address or Router Assigned IP Address using the following format: `http://[0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0]`. To determine your Router Assigned IP Address, navigate to **Monitor** → **Library** → **Network** on the Operator Control Panel. For the IPv6 Router Assigned Addresses to be displayed on the Operator Control Panel, the Network must be configured to IPv6 Only and the Stateless Autoconfig on the must be set to ON.
4. When the login screen appears,
 - Select **admin** for a User ID
 - Enter **secure** for a Password

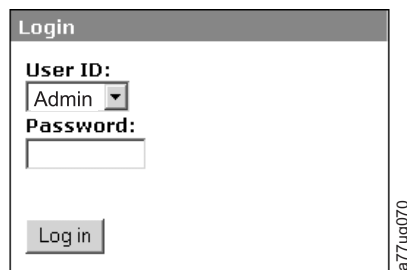


Figure 4-18. Log in screen on the Web User Interface

Verifying/Updating Firmware

It is important to run the latest level of firmware. To ensure that you are running the latest levels of library and drive firmware, complete this procedure.

1. Verify the levels of library and drive firmware currently installed on your library.
 - a. Expand **Monitor Library** in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface.
 - b. Click **Library Identity** and make note of the Firmware revision.
 - c. Click **Drive Identity** and make note of the Firmware revision.
 - d. Log out of the Web User Interface.
2. Download the latest library and drive firmware from <http://support.dell.com>.

- a. Enter in your internet browser address field and press **Enter** on your keyboard.
- b. Compare the firmware level available on the web to those that you made note of in step 1. If you are running the latest levels of library and drive firmware, proceed to the next step. If you are not running the latest levels of library and drive firmware, download the firmware that needs to be updated to your library host.
3. Update library and drive firmware on your library, if necessary.
 - a. Enter the IP Address of your library in your internet browser address field and press **Enter** on your keyboard.
 - b. Log in to your library's Web User Interface.
 - c. Expand **Service Library** in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface.
 - d. Click **Upgrade Firmware**.
 - e. Browse to the new firmware level on your host, then click **Update**. Do this for both library and drive firmware, if necessary.

Choosing General Library Settings

If your library contains only one drive or logical library, both general and specific settings will be combined into one table (see Figure 4-19 on page 4-19).

1. Expand **Configure Library** in the left navigation pane of the Web User Interface.
2. Click **General** and enter the following:
 - **Library Name** - Enter a name for your library.
 - **Library Mode** (select one of the following per logical library):
 - **Random**: In random mode, the library allows the server's (host's) application software to select any data cartridge in any order.
 - **Sequential**: In sequential mode, the library's firmware predefines the selection of the cartridges. After initialization, the firmware causes the library to select the first available cartridge found (counting from the I/O Station through the last slot in your library) for loading into the drive.
 - **Autoload**: Sequential mode with autoload mode ON loads the first available cartridge (slot with the lowest numerical value that contains a cartridge) automatically if the library powers ON with an empty drive.
 - **Loop**: Sequential mode with loop mode ON loads the cartridge in the lowest numerical slot after the cartridge in the highest numerical slot has been filled and sent back to its home slot. This allows endless backup operations without user interaction.
 - **Active Slots** - Select the number of active slots you would like to assign in your library. This item will affect the number of **Res. (Reserved) Slots** in your library. For more information refer to "Configuring I/O Stations and Reserving Slots" on page 5-57.

Note: Slots can be reserved so that they are invisible to the host. It may be necessary to reserve slots in order to match the number of available slots to the ISV software licensing. Slots will be reserved starting with the highest element address. If your library does not have a dedicated cleaning cartridge slot, and you desire to enable Auto Clean, you must designate a reserved slot which can be used to hold the cleaning cartridge.

- **I/O Station Enabled** - If checked, the I/O Station is enabled. If not, the first 3 slots (in a 4U library or the 1st slot in a 2U library) are configured as storage. See “Configure Library: General” on page 5-38.
- **Auto Clean Enabled** - Automatically cleans drive when drive requests cleaning **and** cleaning cartridge is present in a reserved slot or a dedicated cleaning slot. All cleaning cartridges must have **CLN** as part of the bar code. The Universal Cleaning Cartridge has the bar code label CLNUxxLx.
- **Bar Code Label Length Reported to Host** - Choose between 6 and 8. With 6, the first six characters of the cartridge VOLSER (Volume Serial Numbers) will be reported to the host. With 8, All characters in the VOLSER (first six characters plus the two character media type identifier) will be reported to the host. For more information on bar code labels, see “Bar Code Label” on page 6-4.
- Click one of the following:
 - **Refresh** - Click this button to update the current screen.
 - **Apply Selections** - Click this button to submit the changes made to the screen.

General	
Library Name	Boston165
Library Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Random <input type="radio"/> Sequential <input type="checkbox"/> Autoload <input type="checkbox"/> Loop
Active Slots	23 ▼
I/O Station Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Auto Clean Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/>
Barcode Label Length Reported To Host	8 ▼

Refresh Apply Selections

a77ug066

Figure 4-19. The 2U library Configure Library: General screen

General	
Library Name	ATLANTA139
I/O Station Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Auto Clean Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Barcode Label Length Reported To Host	8

Extended Configuration for Logical Libraries	
Logical Library 1	
Library Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Random <input type="radio"/> Sequential <input type="checkbox"/> Autoload <input type="checkbox"/> Loop
Active Slots	8
Logical Library 2	
Library Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Random <input type="radio"/> Sequential <input type="checkbox"/> Autoload <input type="checkbox"/> Loop
Active Slots	12
Logical Library 3	
Library Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Random <input type="radio"/> Sequential <input type="checkbox"/> Autoload <input type="checkbox"/> Loop
Active Slots	23

a77ug094

Figure 4-20. Example: The 4U library Configure Library: General screen

3. If your library has more than one drive, proceed to “Choosing the Number of Logical Libraries for Your Library.” If your library has one drive, proceed to “Entering Path Failover Feature Activation Key” on page 4-21.

Choosing the Number of Logical Libraries for Your Library

Note: Review the information in “Determining the Number of Logical Libraries” on page 3-1 before completing the procedure in this section.

If you have a 2U or 4U library with only one drive, or do not wish to partition your library, proceed to the next section, “Entering Path Failover Feature Activation Key” on page 4-21.

One cartridge magazine cannot be assigned to two logical libraries. If you partition a multi-drive library, each of the magazines must be assigned to a logical library on a magazine boundary. The entire magazine must be part of one logical library only.

Note: If you have a 2U library with two drives, you have the capability to have two logical libraries.

In a fully populated 4U library with two full height drives and two logical libraries, resource assignments will be as follows:

- Logical Library 1 will contain Drive 1 and the left cartridge magazines.
- Logical Library 2 will contain Drive 2 and the right cartridge magazines.

The I/O Station and slots reserved for cleaning cartridges, if any, are shared among all logical libraries.

1. Click **Logical Libraries** in the left navigation pane.

Logical Libraries

Number of Logical Libraries: 3 (Currently configured: 3)

Refresh Submit

Figure 4-21. The 4U library Configure Library: Logical Libraries page

2. Select the number of logical libraries you would like to create in your library.
3. Click **Submit** to create the logical libraries.

Entering Path Failover Feature Activation Key

The Path Failover feature is available for select LTO 4 tape drives. Path Failover is not supported for half height drives. For more information, refer to the *Dell PowerVault TL4000 Failover Configuration Guide*, included with the library documentation.

1. Click **Path Failover** in the left navigation pane.

Path Failover

Feature Activation Key: [] - [] - []

Refresh Activate

Figure 4-22. The Configure Library: Path Failover Feature Activation screen

2. Enter the Control Path Failover 12-digit feature key in the spaces provided.
3. Click **Activate** to save the feature key. The following screen will display if you have correctly entered the feature key.

Path Failover

Path failover is currently activated on this library.

Figure 4-23. Feature Key verification screen

Note: Follow the instructions in the *Dell PowerVault TL4000 Failover Configuration Guide* to configure your environment for failover.

Setting Up Encryption

Note: Application Managed Encryption (AME) does not require a key. Library Managed Encryption requires a license key. The customer should contact their TSR (technical sales representative) to purchase this feature.

Prerequisites for Application Managed Encryption:

- SAS and Fibre Channel LTO Ultrium 4 Tape Drive (Full Height or Half Height)

Note: Fibre Channel is full height drive only.

- Ultrium 4 Tape Cartridge
- Library firmware level 5.80 or higher
- Drive firmware level 77BE or higher

Prerequisites for Library Managed Encryption:

- SAS and Fibre Channel LTO Ultrium 4 Tape Drive (Full Height or Half Height)

Note: Fibre Channel is full height drive only.

- Ultrium 4 Tape Cartridge
- Library firmware level 5.80 or higher
- Drive firmware level 77BE or higher
- Dell Encryption Key Manager application

Setting a Drive's Method of Encryption

1. Click **Encryption (Configure Library → Encryption)** in the left navigation pane.

Encryption is not supported for this Logical Library!

Encryption

Feature Activation Key

- -

a77ug199

Figure 4-24. Feature Activation Key screen

2. On the **Encryption** screen, enter the **Feature Activation Key** to make available the library managed encryption options.
3. Click **Activate** to save the key and expand the screen for additional encryption settings.

Encryption

Feature Activation Key

- -

Encryption Setting for Logical Library 1

Encryption is not supported for this Logical Library!

a77ug192

Figure 4-25. Configure Library: Encryption Activation screen

4. Select **Enable SSL for EKM** to enable Secure Sockets Layer for the Dell Encryption Key Manager application.
5. Select an **Encryption method** for each logical library.
 - Without an encryption license key, select **None** or **Application Managed Encryption**.
 - With an encryption license key, select **Library Managed Encryption**.
6. Select an **Encryption policy** for each logical library.
 - **Encrypt All:** This is the default policy. It encrypts all cartridges using the default data keys specified in the EKM. This setting applies to all drives in a TL2000/TL4000 logical library.
 - **Internal Label - Selective Encryption:** Check your tape backup software application documentation to see if this feature is supported.
 - **Internal Label - Encrypt All:** Check your tape backup software application documentation to see if this feature is supported.
7. A primary and secondary EKM server can be set for each logical library. Each partition has its own Encryption and EKM settings. Maintaining primary and secondary EKM servers is desired for maximum availability of encrypted

backup and recovery. These settings are required for Library Managed Encryption only. Enter the **EKM Server Setting** information.

- **Primary IP address (IPv4 or IPv6):** Enter the IP address of the primary EKM server.
- **Primary TCP port:** After entering the Primary IP address, the library will automatically set the value of the Primary TCP port.
- **Secondary IP address (IPv4 or IPv6):** Enter the IP address of the secondary EKM server.
- **Secondary TCP port:** After entering the **Secondary IP address**, the library will automatically set the value of the **Secondary TCP port**.

Note: The Default Port for TCP (SSL disabled) is **3801**. The Default Port for SSL is **443**. These values are the default values set by the library. They can be changed depending on the user configuration but the user has to make sure they match the EKM properties file.

Note: If SSL is enabled the encryption host configuration will request a SSL port instead of a TCP port. Review your *Dell PowerVault Encryption Key Manager User's Guide* for instructions to locate the appropriate port settings.

8. Click **Activate** to apply the changes.
9. Install the Dell Encryption Key Manager (EKM) application on your host. Refer to the Dell EKM documentation provided with your Encryption packet. The EKM IP address and EKM port will be provided to the user by the EKM application.

Choosing Drive(s) Interface Identification/Settings

1. Click **Drives** in the left navigation pane.

Drives	
Drive 1 (Logical Library 1)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Power On <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Control Path
Note: SAS drives do not require user configuration	
Drive 2 (Logical Library 2)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Power On <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Control Path
SCSI ID	6
Drive 3 (Logical Library 3)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Power On <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Control Path
Port A Configuration	
Speed	Automatic
Port Type	LN-Port
Loop ID	6
Port B Configuration	
Port not available	

a77ug095

Figure 4-26. The Configure Library: Drive screen

2. Select the desired settings for each drive listed (either SCSI, SAS, or Fibre Channel). See Figure 4-26.
3. Click one of the following:
 - **Refresh** - to update the current screen
 - **Submit** - to apply the changes made to the screen

Entering Library Network Settings

This page shows the current network configuration of the library and allows modification to the configuration. When a change is requested, a pop-up box will ask to confirm the changes.

1. Click **Network** in the left navigation pane, to display the **Network** page.

Network

Protocol Stack

IPv4 only

IPv4

DHCP Address

☐ On

Static address

9.11.219.140

Network Mask

255.255.255.0

Gateway address

9.11.219.1

IPv6

DHCP Address

☐

Stateless auto config address

☒

Static assigned address

0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0

Prefix length

64

Gateway address

0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0

SNMP (IPv4)

Enabled

☐

Target 1 - IP Address

0.0.0.0

Version

SNMPv1

Target 2 - IP Address

0.0.0.0

Version

SNMPv1

Target 3 - IP Address

0.0.0.0

Version

SNMPv1

Community Name

public

Security User Name

initial

Enable SSL for Web

☐

Ethernet Settings

Auto

You will be required to login again if changes are made. If you change the IP address of the library, then you will need to use the new IP address when you attempt to access the library again.

Refresh

Submit

a77ug074

Figure 4-27. Configure Library: Network page

2. Select a **Protocol Stack** - Choose **IPv4 only**, **IPv6 only**, or **Dual Stack IPv4 & IPv6**.

Note: When changes are made, the following Warning message will appear when the Submit button is clicked.



Figure 4-28. Warning screen

The library must be rebooted or the changes will not take place.

3. Enter **IPv4 settings (if applicable)**.

- a. **DHCP Address** - Click this item ON to have the IP Address of your library automatically set by the library host computer. Leave unchecked and enter the appropriate information for the IP Address, Network Mask, and Gateway Address.
 - b. **IP Address** - An identifier for a computer or device on a TCP/IP network. Networks using the TCP/IP protocol route messages based on the IP address of the destination. The format of an IP address is a 32-bit numeric address written as four numbers separated by periods. Each number can be zero to 255. For example, 1.160.10.240 could be an IP address.
 - c. **Network Mask** - This address defines and limits users within a local network.
 - d. **Gateway Address** - This address allows access outside the local network.
4. **Enter IPv6 settings (if applicable).**
- a. **DHCP Address** - Click this item ON to have the IP Address of your library automatically set by the library host computer. Leave unchecked and enter the appropriate information for the IP Address, Network Mask, and Gateway Address.
 - b. **IPv6 stateless auto config** - Stateless Auto config is ALWAYS on (not defeatable). When logging in to the library on your browser using an IPv6 address, make sure you enclose the IPv6 address in square brackets. For example: [0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0].
 - c. **Static assigned IPv6 address** - Enter the assigned IPv6 address. The format of an IPv6 IP address is a 128-bit numeric address written as 8 groups of four numbers separated by colons. When logging in to the library on your browser using an IPv6 address, make sure you enclose the IPv6 address in square brackets. For example: [0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0].
 - d. **IPv6 prefix length** - The default prefix length is set to 64, but can be set to any length, depending upon the address used.
 - e. **IPv6 gateway address** - This address allows access outside the local network.
5. **Enter SNMP settings.**
- a. **SNMP Enabled** - If you desire to have SNMP Traps sent to an IP address of your choosing, place a check in this box.
 - b. **SNMP Target 1-IP Address** - If SNMP Traps are enabled, enter an IP address where SNMP Traps are to be sent.
 - c. **SNMP Target 2-IP Address** - Enter an optional 2nd IP address where SNMP Traps are to be sent, or leave as 0.0.0.0.
 - d. **SNMP Target 3-IP Address** - Enter an optional 3rd IP address where SNMP Traps are to be sent, or leave as 0.0.0.0.
 - e. **Community Name** - Enter your preferred name, or leave as "public". The Community Name is limited to 33 alpha-numeric characters (A-Z, a-z, 0-9).
6. **Enable SSL for secure Web communication** - If you desire to have SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) enabled, place a check in this box.
7. **Select an Ethernet Setting** - You can disable Ethernet settings, manually enable them, or let another machine enable them by using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP). You can also set a specific speed for the Ethernet port or specify the library to automatically negotiate the speed. Ethernet Settings choices are: **Auto** (the default), **10 Mbit/Half**, **10 Mbit/Full**, **100 Mbit/Half**, **100 Mbit/Full**. Please refer to <http://support.dell.com> to determine the availability of manual Ethernet settings in your library's firmware.

Entering User Access Information using the Web User Interface

This function, other than the Access PIN, is not available on the Operator Control Panel.

1. Click **User Access** in the left navigation pane.

The screenshot shows a web form titled 'User Access'. It contains the following fields: 'Role' (a dropdown menu with 'User' selected), 'New Password (Enter Up To Ten Characters)' (a text field with a password strength indicator), 'Repeat Password' (a text field with a password strength indicator), 'Support Name' (a text field), 'Support Phone' (a text field), and 'Support Email' (a text field). At the bottom right of the form are two buttons: 'Refresh' and 'Submit'. A vertical text 'a77ug082' is visible on the right side of the form.

Figure 4-29. The Configure Library: User Access screen

2. Choose a Role.

- User
- Superuser
- Admin
- Service

Note: Only one password can be set for each Role.

3. Enter the **New Password** . The password has a maximum of 10 characters (A-Z, a-z, 0-9, @, <hyphen>, <space>, <period>).
4. In **Repeat Password**, enter the new password again.
5. In **Support Name**, enter the name of the person that will be able to offer the user help with the library.

Note: Only one support person can be configured for the entire tape library. The support person may or may not be one of the user, superuser, or admin account holders.

6. In **Support Phone**, enter the phone number of the person that will be able to offer the user help with the library.
7. In **Support Email**, enter the email address of the person that will be able to offer the user help with the library.
8. Click one of the following:
 - **Refresh** - to update the current screen.
 - **Submit** - to apply the changes made to the screen.

Entering Date and Time using the Web User Interface

1. Click **Date & Time** in the left navigation pane.

Date & Time			
Time (24H)	17	: 41	: 11
Date	Month : 04	Day : 11	Year : 2006
<input type="button" value="Refresh"/> <input type="button" value="Submit"/>			

Figure 4-30. The Configure Library: Date and Time screen

2. Enter the current **Time** using the HH:MM:SS 24-hour format.
3. Enter the current **Date** using the MMDDYYYY format.
4. Click one of the following:
 - **Refresh** - to update the current screen
 - **Submit** - to apply changes made to the current screen

Configuring Logs and Traces using the Web User Interface

This function is not available on the Operator Control Panel.

1. Click **Logs & Traces** in the left navigation pane.

Logs & Traces	
Error Log Mode	<input type="radio"/> Off <input checked="" type="radio"/> Continuous <input type="radio"/> Stop Trace At First Error
Trace Level	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Cmd <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Response <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Event <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Trace Data <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Low Level Trace <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Recovered Error <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hard Error
Trace Filter	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Main <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Drive <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CDB Interpreter <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Robotic <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Trace <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OCP Input <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OCP Output <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SCSI Module <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SDCI Module
<input type="button" value="Refresh"/> <input type="button" value="Submit"/>	

Figure 4-31. The Configure Library: Logs and Traces screen

2. For Error Log Mode, select **Continuous** so all information for logs and traces will be captured.
3. Leave all options under **Trace Level** and **Trace Filters** selected. These options can be changed by Service personnel only.
4. Click **Submit** to apply any changes.

Entering Event Notification Information using the Web User Interface

This function is not available on the Operator Control Panel.

Use this menu item to set up email notification of library errors and warnings.

1. Click **Event Notification** in the left navigation pane.

Event Notification	
Notify Errors	<input type="checkbox"/> On
Notify Warnings	<input type="checkbox"/> On
To Email Address	<input type="text"/>
Email Domain	<input type="text"/>
SMTP Server Address	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>

a77ug065

Figure 4-32. The Configure Library: Event Notification screen

2. If you would like to be notified when an error occurs, select **Notify Errors**.
3. If you would like to be notified when a warning occurs, select **Notify Warnings**.
4. In **To Email Address**, enter the email address to which the information will be sent.
5. In **Email Domain**, enter the domain name for the email address.
6. In **SMTP Server Address**, enter the IP Address of the SMTP server associated with the email address.

Running Key Path Diagnostic for Testing Encryption Configuration

Please refer to <http://support.dell.com> to determine the availability of this feature.

If you have purchased an encryption activation key and any drives in your library are configured for library managed encryption, run the Key Path Diagnostic to ensure that your encryption configuration is correct.

Important: Ensure that library firmware and drive firmware are up to date before running the Key Path Diagnostic. Library firmware level must be greater than 6.xx. See “Verifying/Updating Firmware” on page 4-17.

For information on running the diagnostic, refer to “Service Library: Perform Key Path Diagnostics” on page 5-53.

Restoring Factory Default Settings using the Web User Interface

If you would like to erase your current configuration and restore factory default settings (see Table 5-3 in “Configure: Restore Defaults” on page 5-24), do so by selecting **Restore Defaults** in the Configure Library menu.

This function is also available on the Operator Control Panel. If you do not have the capability of accessing your library using the Web User Interface, write down all library configuration settings on the Appendix F, “Library Configuration Form,” on page F-1 for future reference.

Logging out of the Web User Interface

It is important to log out of the Web User Interface before using the Operator Control panel. To log out of the Web User Interface, click **Logout** in the upper right corner of the current screen. If you click the **X** in the upper right corner of your internet browser window, you will not log out of the Web User Interface.

Setting the Operator Control Panel Access PIN using the Operator Control Panel

1. Navigate to **Configure** → **Set Access PIN**.
2. Press the SELECT button to highlight the first digit of the 4-digit Access PIN.
3. Use the UP and DOWN buttons to select each digit.
4. Press the SELECT button to move to the next digit.
5. Repeat these steps for repeating the Access PIN.
6. After entering the final digit, press the DOWN button and select one of the following:
 - **Save** - to apply your settings.
 - **Cancel** - to delete your settings.

Preparing the Host

Follow these general guidelines:

1. Ensure that your backup application supports the SCSI, SAS, or Fibre Channel host bus adapter (HBA).
2. Ensure that all the required or latest available Operating System files and/or updates (dll's, PTF's, etc.) have been installed and applied.
3. If the host server is connected to a network, check with the system administrator before turning host power OFF.
4. Install a suitably rated HBA. Remember that if there are any single-ended (SE) devices on the same SCSI bus, the entire SCSI bus will negotiate down to SE speed and severely degrade performance and limit cable length.
5. Ensure that LUN scanning is enabled on the SCSI host adapter.
6. Ensure that Fibre Channel Tape Support is enabled on the Fibre Channel HBA if installing a library with a Fibre Channel drive.
7. Ensure that SAS support is enabled on the SAS HBA if installing a library with a SAS drive.
8. For library managed encryption capability, install the Dell Encryption Key Manager (EKM) application on your host. Refer to the *Dell PowerVault Encryption Key Manager User's Guide* for detailed instructions.

Verifying the Connection

1. Depending on the server configuration, you may need to change the SCSI ID or Fibre Channel Loop ID of the library, if the current ID is the same as another device on the bus.
2. When the host server is powered ON, install the software and/or driver(s) that are compatible with the library. Backup software packages may require additional software or licensing to communicate with the library accessor.
3. If this is a SCSI attachment, ensure the library is properly terminated. If the library is the only SCSI device, other than the SCSI host adapter on the selected SCSI bus, it must be terminated. Likewise, if the library is physically the last SCSI device on the SCSI bus, it must be terminated. Only the devices physically located at the beginning and end of the SCSI bus should be terminated.
4. Confirm that the host server operating system recognized the library. In Microsoft® Windows® Server 2003, you can verify this by going to: **Settings** → **Control Panel** → **System** → **Hardware** → **Device Manager** → **Tape Drive and/or Medium Changer** .

For more information on verifying the connection of SCSI devices, see the operating system documentation.

Cartridge Magazines

The library has removable magazines. Magazine access is password protected. For safety reasons, the accessor motion is stopped when a magazine is removed.

The magazines can be released using the Operator Control Panel or the Web User Interface. In case the Operator Control Panel or Web User Interface initiated process has failed or the library no longer has power, a manual emergency release is available.

Important: To manually release a magazine, see “Releasing the Magazines Manually” on page 9-1. This manual process should only be used if the magazine cannot be released using the Operator Control Panel or the Web User Interface.

2U Library Cartridge Magazines

The 2U library has two cartridge magazines. The left cartridge magazine (see Figure 4-33) has eleven storage slots and houses the elective 1-slot I/O Station. The right magazine (see Figure 4-34) has twelve storage slots. For information about Element Addressing, see “2U Library I/O Slot, Storage Slots and Drive Slot Element Addresses and Physical Locations” on page A-1.



Figure 4-33. 2U library left magazine



Figure 4-34. 2U library right magazine

2U Library I/O Station

The I/O (Input/Output) Station (see Figure 4-35) in a 2U library is part of the left magazine. To open the I/O Station, select **Control** → **Open I/O Station**. The I/O Station will pop open. To close the I/O Station, gently push it back into the left magazine.



Figure 4-35. 2U library I/O Station in the left magazine

4U Library Cartridge Magazines

The 4U library has four cartridge magazines, two on each side (see Figure 4-36 and Figure 4-37 on page 4-32). The upper left magazine has twelve storage slots. The lower left magazine has nine storage slots and houses the elective 3-slot I/O Station (**1** in Figure 4-36). The upper right magazine has twelve storage slots. The lower right magazine has twelve storage slots. For information on Element Addressing, see “4U Library I/O Slots, Storage Slots, and Drive Slots Element Addresses and Physical Locations” on page A-2.



Figure 4-36. 4U library left magazines

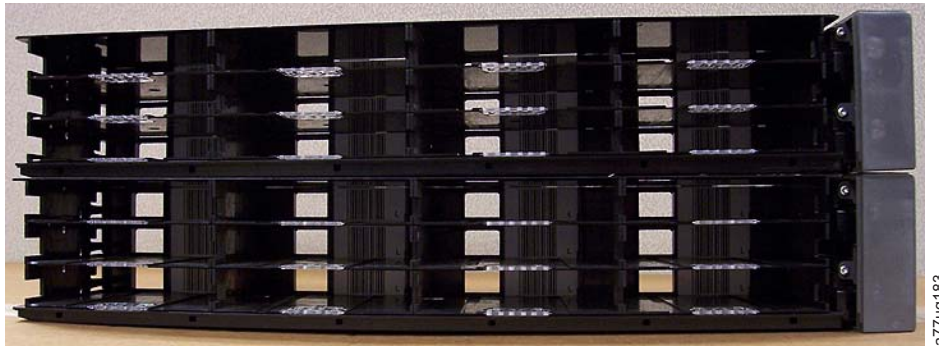


Figure 4-37. 4U library right magazines

4U Library I/O Station

The I/O Station in a 4U library (see Figure 4-38) is part of the lower left magazine. To open the I/O Station, select **Control** → **Open I/O Station**. The I/O Station will pop open. To close the I/O Station, gently push it back into the lower left magazine.



Figure 4-38. 4U library I/O Station in the lower left magazine

There are finger holes on the back side of the I/O Station (see **1** in Figure 4-39 on page 4-33) that allow the user to push the cartridges out of the I/O station.



Figure 4-39. Finger Holes on back side of 4U library I/O Station

Populating the Library with Data Cartridges

For information on working with the cartridge magazines, see “Cartridge Magazines” on page 4-30.

1. Unlock the cartridge magazines.
 - Using the Operator Control Panel: **Control** → **Magazines**
 - Using the Web User Interface: **Manage Library** → **Release Magazine**

Note: The magazines will relock after 15 seconds if they have not been removed.

2. Remove all magazines from the library.
3. Insert cartridges in the left magazine(s). Do not store cartridges in the I/O Station or in the dedicated cleaning cartridge slot. See “2U Library I/O Slot, Storage Slots and Drive Slot Element Addresses and Physical Locations” on page A-1 or “4U Library I/O Slots, Storage Slots, and Drive Slots Element Addresses and Physical Locations” on page A-2 for determining slot location.
4. Insert cartridges in the right magazine(s).
5. Put all magazines back into the library. The library will automatically start up and perform an inventory check.

Inserting the Cleaning Cartridge

See the **Note** below for 4U libraries with a Dedicated Cleaning Slot (DCS).

The following criteria must be followed for **Auto Clean** to function:

1. The **Auto Clean** function must be configured "On" or "Enabled".
 - Operator Control Panel: **Configure->Library Settings->Enabled**
 - Web User Interface: **Configure Library->General->Auto Clean->checkmark**

Note: Earlier versions of the 4U library contained a **Dedicated Cleaning Slot (DCS)**. This DCS can be retained and is supported by future library firmware updates. However, library firmware later than 3.90 will allow removal of the DCS, thus enabling this slot to be used as a storage slot. Once the DCS is removed, the Auto Clean cleaning cartridge slot must be configured as described below. If the DCS has been removed, it can only be reinstated by restoring factory default settings. To remove the DCS, perform the following procedure using the Operator Control Panel (OCP): **OCP->Configure->Library Settings->General->Remove DCS->No/Yes->Save**.

2. A storage slot must be reserved (Res or RSVD).
 - Reserving a slot is accomplished by reducing the **Active Slot** count in any particular logical library. A reserved slot (or slots) is always the last slot in the last magazine of any particular logical library. A cleaning cartridge that is in a reserved slot is available to any logical library drive even if the reserved slot is not in that particular logical library. If the library contains multiple logical libraries, typically, the last logical library is chosen to be the reserved slot containing the cleaning cartridge. As with a library with a single logical library, this slot is the last physical slot in the library (top right magazine, uppermost rear slot).
3. A cleaning cartridge (**CLNxxxLx**) must be placed or moved to a reserved slot.
 - A cleaning cartridge must be replaced after 50 uses. Click on the Web User Interface, **Monitor Library->Inventory**.
 - Find the magazine that contains the cleaning cartridge.
 - Click on the (+) located under that magazine presentation to expand the detail of resident cartridges.
 - Observe the cleaning cartridge location displayed. The number of Media Loads represent how many times the cleaning cartridge has been used. The number 50, minus that Media Load number represents the number of uses left.
4. To install a cleaning cartridge in the 2U or 4U library:
 - a. Use the Operator Control Panel: **Control → Move Cartridge** or the Web User Interface: **Manage Library → Move Media** to insert the cleaning cartridge into the reserved slot or the DCS (if one exists, 4U only).
 - b. An alternate method is to use the Release Magazine option:
 - Operator Control Panel: **Control → Magazine (Left/Right)**
 - Web User Interface: **Manage Library → Release Magazines (Left/Right)**
 - c. Place a cleaning cartridge into the reserved slot or the DCS (if one exists, 4U only).

Note: A user has the option to perform manual cleaning by navigating in the RMU to **Service → Clean Drive**. In units with more than one drive to be

cleaned, the user must manually refresh the screen after the clean has completed in order to be able to select an additional drive to be cleaned.

Chapter 5. Operations

The following table lists menu navigation shortcuts to activities that can be performed via the Operator Control Panel and/or the Web User Interface.

Before using the Operator Control Panel or the Web user Interface, please review the information in Chapter 3: **User Interfaces**.

Table 5-1. Menu navigation shortcuts

Information/ Activity	Menu Navigation Shortcuts			
	Operator Control Panel	For More Info	Web User Interface	For More Info
Access PIN, create new	Configure → Set Access PIN	“Configure: Set Access PIN” on page 5-24	Configure Library → User Access	“Configure Library: User Access” on page 5-46
Access PIN, modify existing	Configure → Set Access PIN	“Configure: Set Access PIN” on page 5-24	Configure Library → User Access	“Configure Library: User Access” on page 5-46
Accessor, number of cartridge moves	Monitor → Library → Status → Cycles	“Monitor: Library” on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Status	“Monitor Library: Library Status” on page 5-33
Auto Clean, enable	Configure → Library Settings → Auto Clean	“Configure: Library” on page 5-20	Configure Library → General	“Configure Library: General” on page 5-38
Cartridge, currently active/moving	Monitor → Library → Status → Act. Cart	“Monitor: Library” on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Status	“Monitor Library: Library Status” on page 5-33
Cartridge, determine encryption	Not available with this interface		Monitor Library → Inventory	“Monitor Library: Inventory” on page 5-37
Cartridge, Inventory	Monitor → Inventory → Magazines	“Monitor: Inventory” on page 5-15	Manage Library → Perform Inventory	“Manage Library: Perform Inventory” on page 5-50
Cartridge, Move	Control → Move Cartridges	“Control: Move Cartridges” on page 5-17	Manage Library → Move Media	“Manage Library: Move Media” on page 5-49
Cartridge currently in drive (n), serial number	Monitor → Inventory → Drive (n)	“Monitor: Inventory” on page 5-15	Monitor Library → Drive Status	“Monitor Library: Drive Status” on page 5-34

Table 5-1. Menu navigation shortcuts (continued)

Information/ Activity	Menu Navigation Shortcuts			
	Operator Control Panel	For More Info	Web User Interface	For More Info
Cartridge in drive (n), serial number	Monitor → Drive → Status → Drive (n)/Source	"Monitor: Drive" on page 5-13	Monitor Library → Drive Status	"Monitor Library: Drive Status" on page 5-34
Configuration, save and restore	Configure → Restore Defaults	"Configure: Restore Defaults" on page 5-24	Configure Library → Restore Defaults	"Configure Library: Restore Defaults" on page 5-49
Control path, enable	Configure → Drive → Control Paths	"Configure: Drive" on page 5-22	Configure Library → Drive	"Configure Library: Drives" on page 5-43
Date and time, current setting	Monitor → Library → Identity → Date/Time	"Monitor: Library" on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Identity	"Monitor Library: Library Identity" on page 5-30
Date and time, set	Configure → Set Date and Time	"Configure: Set Date and Time" on page 5-25	Configure Library → Date & Time	"Configure Library: Date & Time" on page 5-47
Dedicated Cleaning slot, removing, reinstating	Configure → Library Settings	"Configure: Library" on page 5-20	Not available with this interface	
DHCP, current status	Monitor → Library → Network → DHCP	"Configure: Network" on page 5-23	Configure Library → Network	"Configure Library: Network" on page 5-44
DHCP, modify	Configure → Network → DHCP	"Configure: Network" on page 5-23	Configure Library → Network	"Configure Library: Network" on page 5-44
Diagnostics, run drive Head test	Service → Service → Drive Tests	"Service: Run Tests" on page 5-27	Service Library → Perform Diagnostics	"Service Library: Perform Diagnostics" on page 5-52
Diagnostics, run drive Media test	Service → Service → Drive Tests	"Service: Run Tests" on page 5-27	Service Library → Perform Diagnostics	"Service Library: Perform Diagnostics" on page 5-52
Diagnostics, run drive Normal Read/Write test	Service → Service → Drive Tests	"Service: Run Tests" on page 5-27	Service Library → Perform Diagnostics	"Service Library: Perform Diagnostics" on page 5-52

Table 5-1. Menu navigation shortcuts (continued)

Information/ Activity	Menu Navigation Shortcuts			
	Operator Control Panel	For More Info	Web User Interface	For More Info
Diagnostics, run drive POST	Service → Service → Drive Tests	“Service: Run Tests” on page 5-27	Service Library → Perform Diagnostics	“Service Library: Perform Diagnostics” on page 5-52
Diagnostics, run Key Path diagnostics (if feature is available)	Not available with this interface		Service Library → Perform Key Path Diagnostics	“Service Library: Perform Key Path Diagnostics” on page 5-53
Diagnostics, run Library Verify test	Service → Library Verify	“Service: Library Verify” on page 5-26	Not available with this interface.	
Diagnostics, run Slot to Slot test	Service → Run Tests	“Service: Run Tests” on page 5-27	Service Library → Perform Diagnostics	“Service Library: Perform Diagnostics” on page 5-52
Diagnostics, run System Test	Service → Run Tests	“Service: Run Tests” on page 5-27	Service Library → Perform Diagnostics	“Service Library: Perform Diagnostics” on page 5-52
Display Contrast	Service → Display Contrast	“Service: Display Contrast” on page 5-29	Not available with this interface.	
Drive, change interface configuration	Configure → Drive → Drive Interface	“Configure: Drive” on page 5-22	Configure Library → Drives	“Configure Library: Drives” on page 5-43
Drive, change encryption	Not available with this interface		Configure Library → Encryption	“Configure Library: Encryption” on page 5-41
Drive, clean	Service → Service → Clean Drive	“Service: Service (Drives)” on page 5-27	Service Library → Clean Drive	“Service Library: Clean Drive” on page 5-50
Drive, current SCSI/Loop ID	Monitor → Drive → Identity	“Monitor: Drive” on page 5-13	Monitor Library → Drive Identity	“Monitor Library: Drive Identity” on page 5-31
Drive, current status	Monitor → Drive → Status	“Monitor: Drive” on page 5-13	Monitor Library → Drive Status	“Monitor Library: Drive Status” on page 5-34

Table 5-1. Menu navigation shortcuts (continued)

Information/ Activity	Menu Navigation Shortcuts			
	Operator Control Panel	For More Info	Web User Interface	For More Info
Drive, data compression ON/OFF	Not available with this interface.		Monitor Library → Drive Identity → Data Compression	"Monitor Library: Drive Identity" on page 5-31
Drive, Fibre, Worldwide Node Name	Monitor → Drive → Identity → Drive (n)/WWNN	"Monitor: Drive" on page 5-13	Monitor Library → Drive Status	"Monitor Library: Drive Status" on page 5-34
Drive, Hashed SAS Address	Not available with this interface.		Monitor Library → Drive Status → Hashed SAS Address	"Monitor Library: Drive Status" on page 5-34
Drive, Interface type	Configure → Drive → Drive Interface	"Configure: Drive" on page 5-22	Configure Library → Drive	"Configure Library: Drives" on page 5-43
Drive, SCSI Inquiry string	Monitor → Drive → Identity → Drive (n)/Product ID	"Monitor: Drive" on page 5-13	Monitor Library → Drive Identity	"Monitor Library: Drive Identity" on page 5-31
Drive, turn power ON/OFF	Service → Service → Drive Power	"Service: Service (Drives)" on page 5-27	Configure Library → Drive	"Configure Library: Drives" on page 5-43
Drive activity, current	Monitor → Drive → Status → Drive (n)/Activity	"Monitor: Drive" on page 5-13	Monitor Library → Drive Status	"Monitor Library: Drive Status" on page 5-34
Drive fan, status	Monitor → Drive → Status → Drive (n)/Cooling	"Monitor: Drive" on page 5-13	Monitor Library → Drive Status	"Monitor Library: Drive Status" on page 5-34
Drive Dump, save	Not available with this interface.		Service Library → Save Drive Dump	"Save Drive Dump" on page 5-52
Encryption, activate	Not available with this interface.		Configure Library → Encryption	"Configure Library: Encryption" on page 5-41
Encryption, configure	Not available with this interface.		Configure Library → Encryption	"Configure Library: Encryption" on page 5-41

Table 5-1. Menu navigation shortcuts (continued)

Information/ Activity	Menu Navigation Shortcuts			
	Operator Control Panel	For More Info	Web User Interface	For More Info
Encryption, testing configuration(if feature is available)	Not available with this interface.		Service Library → Perform Key Path Diagnostics	“Service Library: Perform Key Path Diagnostics” on page 5-53
Encryption, determine method, current method	Not available with this interface.		Monitor Library → Drive Status → Encryption method	“Monitor Library: Drive Status” on page 5-34
Ethernet settings	Configure → Drive → Ethernet		Configure Library → Ethernet	
Event notifications: add, modify, and delete	Not available with this interface.		Configure Library → Event Notification	“Configure Library: Event Notification” on page 5-48
Error log, view	Monitor → Library → Error log	“Monitor: Library” on page 5-11	Service Library → View logs	“View Logs” on page 5-51
Error logs and traces, set mode	Not available with this interface		Configure Library → Logs & Traces	“Configure Library: Logs & Traces” on page 5-48
Factory Default settings, restore	Configure → Restore Default	“Configure: Restore Defaults” on page 5-24	Configure Library → Restore Defaults	“Configure Library: Restore Defaults” on page 5-49
Fibre Channel, speed	Monitor → Drive → Status → Drive (n)/Speed	“Monitor: Drive” on page 5-13	Monitor Library → Drive Status	“Monitor Library: Drive Status” on page 5-34
Fibre Channel, topology	Monitor → Drive → Status → Drive (n)/Topology	“Monitor: Drive” on page 5-13	Monitor Library → Drive Status	“Monitor Library: Drive Status” on page 5-34
Fibre Channel link, status	Monitor → Drive → Status → Drive (n)/Link	“Monitor: Drive” on page 5-13	Monitor Library → Drive Status	“Monitor Library: Drive Status” on page 5-34
Firmware, drive, current level	Monitor → Drive → Identity	“Monitor: Drive” on page 5-13	Monitor Library → Drive Identity	“Monitor Library: Drive Identity” on page 5-31
Firmware, library, identify current level	Monitor → Library → Identity	“Monitor: Library” on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Identity	“Monitor Library: Library Identity” on page 5-30

Table 5-1. Menu navigation shortcuts (continued)

Information/ Activity	Menu Navigation Shortcuts			
	Operator Control Panel	For More Info	Web User Interface	For More Info
Firmware, library, update	Not available with this interface.		Service Library → Upgrade Firmware	"Service Library: Upgrade Firmware" on page 5-54
Gateway, current address	Monitor → Library → Network → Gateway	"Monitor: Library" on page 5-11	Configure Library → Network	"Configure Library: Network" on page 5-44
Gateway Address, modify	Configure → Network → Gateway	"Configure: Network" on page 5-23	Configure Library → Network	"Configure Library: Network" on page 5-44
Inventory, perform	Control → Re-Inventory	"Control: Re-Inventory" on page 5-18	Manage Library → Perform Inventory	"Manage Library: Perform Inventory" on page 5-50
I/O Station, configuring	Configure → Library	"Configure: Library" on page 5-20	Configure Library → General	"Configure Library: General" on page 5-38
I/O Station, current status	Monitor → Library → Status	"Monitor: Library" on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Status	"Monitor Library: Library Status" on page 5-33
I/O Station, open	Control → Open I/O Station	"Control: Open I/O Station" on page 5-16	Not available with this interface	
IP Address, current	Monitor → Library → Identity	"Monitor: Library" on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Identity	"Monitor Library: Library Identity" on page 5-30
IP Address, modify	Configure → Network → IP Address	"Configure: Network" on page 5-23	Configure Library → Network	"Configure Library: Network" on page 5-44
Library, current status	Monitor → Library → Status	"Monitor: Library" on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Status	"Monitor Library: Library Status" on page 5-33
Logical libraries, configure	Configure → Logical Libraries	"Configure: Logical Libraries" on page 5-18	Configure Library → Logical Libraries	"Configure Library: Logical Libraries" on page 5-40

Table 5-1. Menu navigation shortcuts (continued)

Information/ Activity	Menu Navigation Shortcuts			
	Operator Control Panel	For More Info	Web User Interface	For More Info
Logs, library, view	Monitor → Library → Error Log	“Monitor: Library” on page 5-11	Service Library → View Logs	“View Logs” on page 5-51
Magazines, graphical representation	Monitor → Inventory → Magazines	“Monitor: Inventory” on page 5-15	Monitor Library → Inventory	“Monitor Library: Inventory” on page 5-37
Magazines, Unlock	Control → Magazines	“Control: Magazine” on page 5-17	Manage Library → Release Magazine	“Manage Library: Release Magazine” on page 5-50
Mode, library, change	Configure → Library Settings → Mode	“Configure: Library” on page 5-20	Configure Library → General	“Configure Library: General” on page 5-38
Mode, library, current	Monitor → Library → Identity	“Monitor: Library” on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Identity	“Monitor Library: Library Identity” on page 5-30
Netmask, current address	Monitor → Library → Network → Netmask	“Monitor: Library” on page 5-11	Configure Library → Network	“Configure Library: Network” on page 5-44
Netmask Address, modify	Configure → Network → Netmask	“Configure: Network” on page 5-23	Configure Library → Network	“Configure Library: Network” on page 5-44
Network configuration, change	Configure → Network	“Configure: Network” on page 5-23	Configure Library → Network	“Configure Library: Network” on page 5-44
Network configuration, view	Monitor → Library → Network	“Monitor: Library” on page 5-11	Configure Library → Network	“Configure Library: Network” on page 5-44
Path Failover, enter activation key	Configure → Path Failover	“Configure: Path Failover” on page 5-26	Configure Library → Path Failover	“Configure Library: Path Failover” on page 5-40
Power cycles	Monitor → Library → Status	“Monitor: Library” on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Status	“Monitor Library: Library Status” on page 5-33
Restart, library,	Not available with this interface.		Service Library → Reboot	“Service Library: Reboot” on page 5-55

Table 5-1. Menu navigation shortcuts (continued)

Information/ Activity	Menu Navigation Shortcuts			
	Operator Control Panel	For More Info	Web User Interface	For More Info
SCSI Inquiry string, library	Monitor → Library → Identity	"Monitor: Library" on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Identity	"Monitor Library: Library Identity" on page 5-30
Serial Number, drive	Monitor → Drive → Identity	"Monitor: Drive" on page 5-13	Monitor Library → Drive Identity	"Monitor Library: Drive Identity" on page 5-31
Serial Number, library	Monitor → Library → Identity	"Monitor: Library" on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Identity	"Monitor Library: Library Identity" on page 5-30
Slots, number active	Monitor → Library → Identity → Active Slots	"Monitor: Library" on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Identity	"Monitor Library: Library Identity" on page 5-30
Slots, number empty	Monitor → Library → Status → Slots Empty	"Monitor: Library" on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Status	"Monitor Library: Library Status" on page 5-33
Slots, reassign number of active, reserving	Configure → Library Settings → Active Slots	"Configure: Library" on page 5-20	Configure Library → General	"Configure Library: General" on page 5-38
SNMP, modify settings	Not available with this interface.		Configure Library → Network	"Configure Library: Network" on page 5-44
Telnet Service Port, activate	Service → Telnet Service Port	"Service: Telnet Service Port" on page 5-29	Not available with this interface.	
Time elapsed since power ON	Monitor → Library → Status	"Monitor: Library" on page 5-11	Monitor Library → Library Status	"Monitor Library: Library Status" on page 5-33
Operator Control Panel, access PIN, enable/disable	Configure → Set Access PIN	"Configure: Set Access PIN" on page 5-24	Not available with this interface.	
Web User Interface, user access, create or modify	Not available with this interface.		Configure Library → User Access	"Configure Library: User Access" on page 5-46

Operator Control Panel Navigation

The four control keys on the front of a 2U or 4U library enable the user to navigate through the library settings and make changes as needed to configure the library.

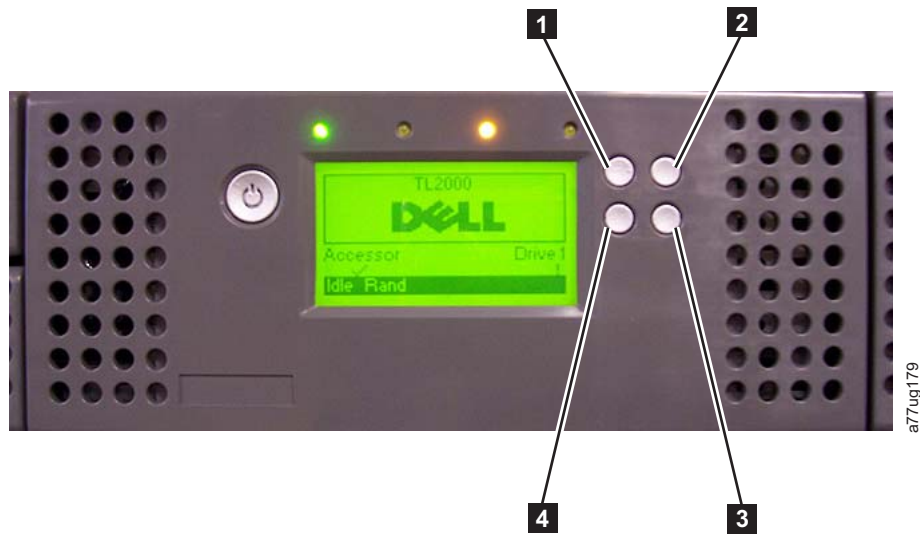


Figure 5-1. 2U Library Control Keys

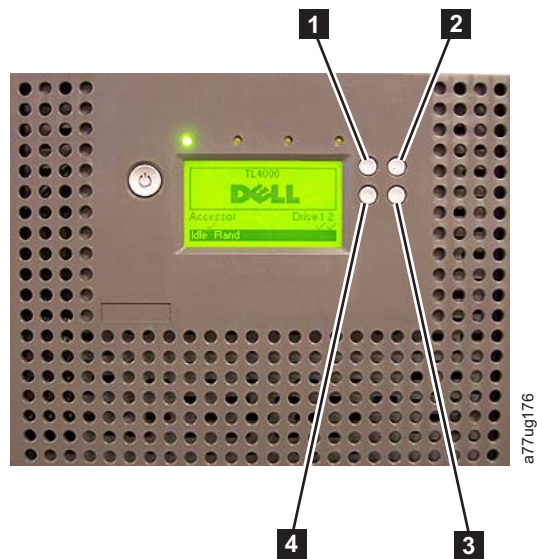


Figure 5-2. 4U Library Control Keys

Table 5-2. Library Control Keys

Control Keys	Description
1	UP (+) - Upper left button Used to scroll upward through menu items.
2	CANCEL - Upper right button Used to cancel a user action and return to the previous menu screen.

Table 5-2. Library Control Keys (continued)

Control Keys	Description
3	SELECT - Lower right button Used to display a sub-menu or force an accessor action.
4	DOWN (-) - Lower left button Used to scroll downward through menu items.

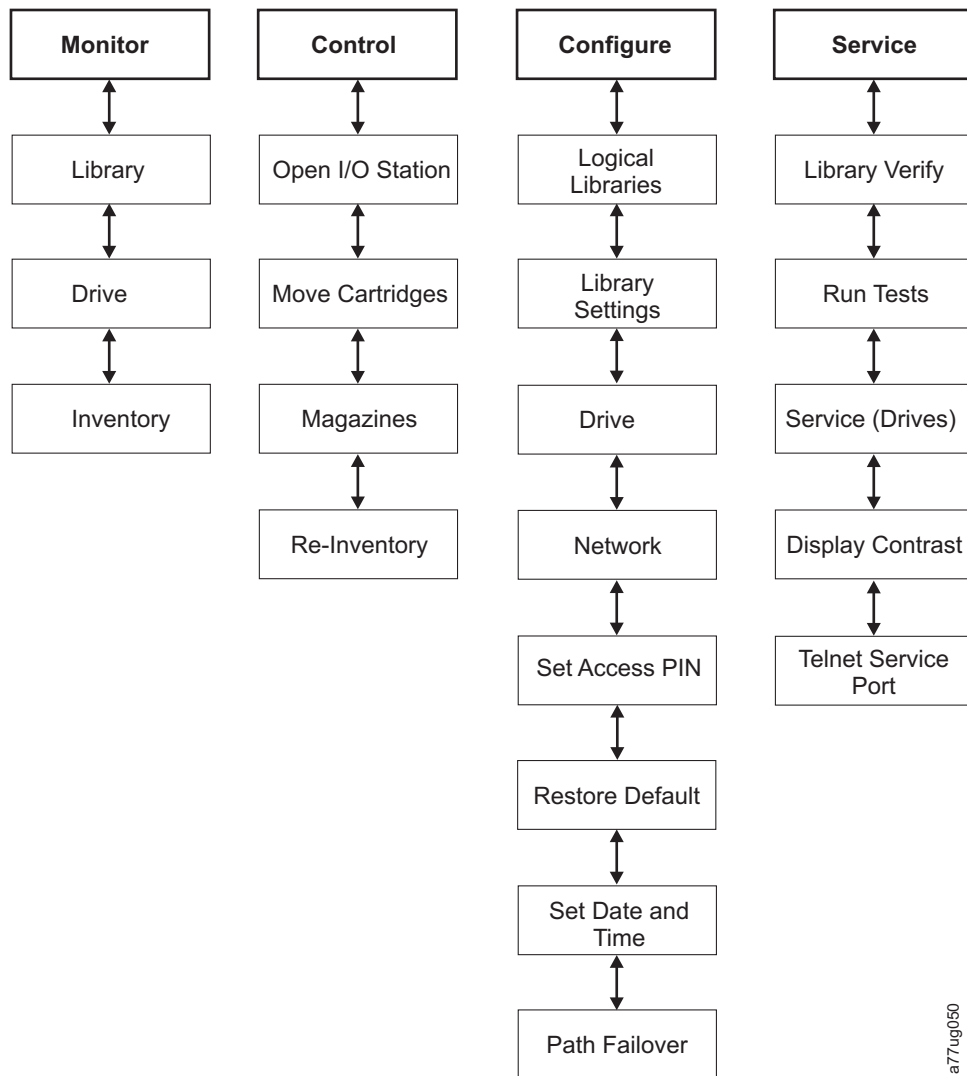
1. Press the UP (**1**) or DOWN(**4**) keys to enter Interaction Mode. The Main Selection Menu will appear. The Main Selection screen shows Monitor, Control, Configure, and Service.
2. Scroll to your selection, then press the SELECT (**3**) key. The sub-menu for the selected menu item will appear.
3. Use the UP (**1**) or DOWN(**4**) and SELECT (**3**) keys to scroll until you get to the area/screen you wish to configure.
4. Use the CANCEL (**2**) key if you wish to move backwards through the menu selections.

Operator Control Panel Menu Tree

The Operator Control Panel Main menu is made up of the following items:

- Monitor
- Control
- Configure
- Service

The table below shows each Main menu item and the associated sub menu items.



a77ug050

Figure 5-3. Operator Control Panel Menu Tree

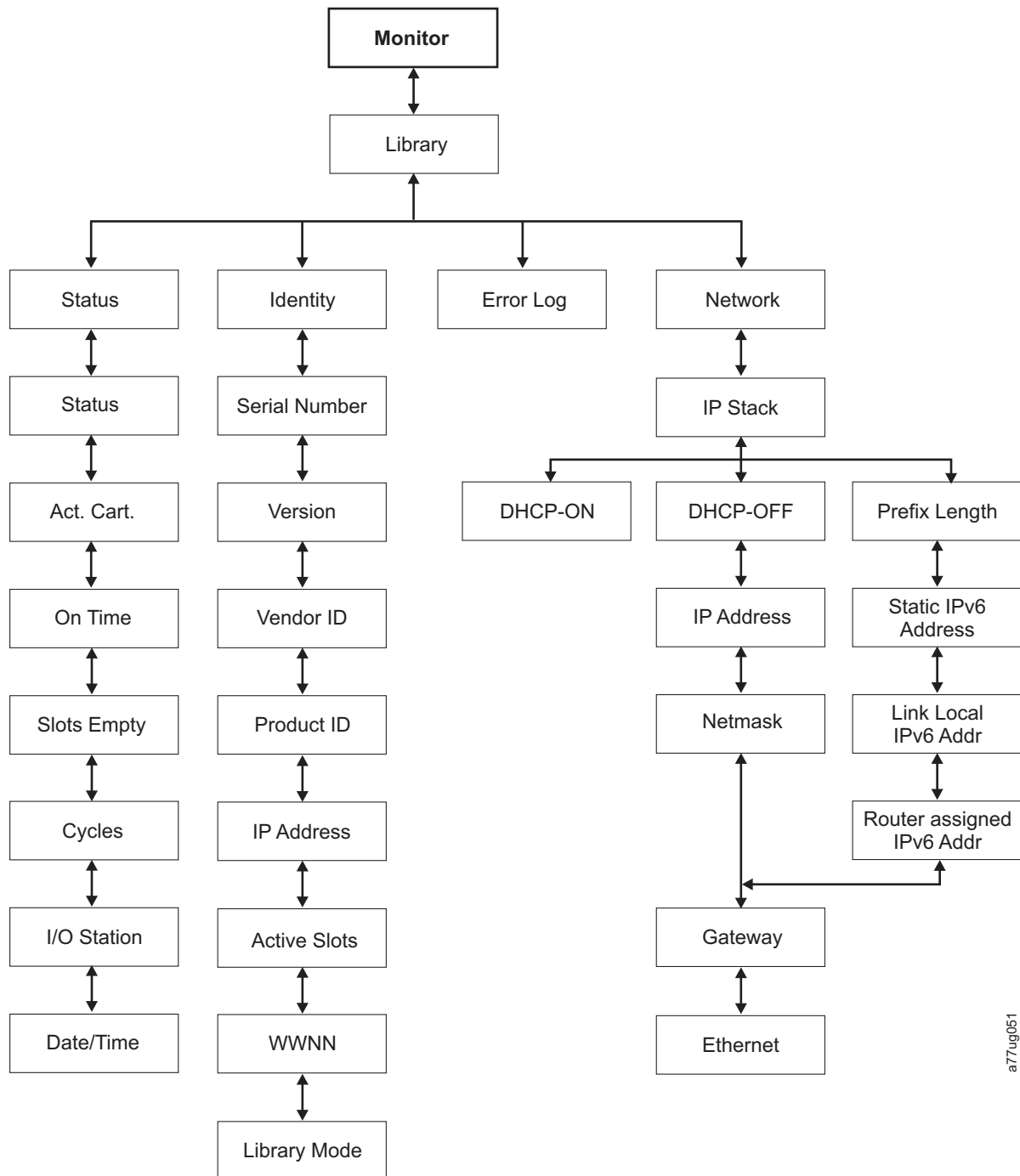
Monitor Menu

The Monitor menu contains information about the following sub menu items:

- Library
- Drive
- Inventory

Monitor: Library

This menu item displays current library information and settings.



a77ug051

Figure 5-4. Monitor: Library menu

Under **Monitor** → **Library** are the following items:

- **Status**
- **Identity**
- **Error Log**
- **Network**

Under **Monitor** → **Library** → **Status** are the following items:

- Status - current status of the library

- Act. Cart - the serial number of the cartridge currently active in the library
- On Time - the amount of time the library has been powered ON
- Slots Empty - the number of empty slots in the library
- Cycles - the total number of cartridge moves carried out by the library accessor
- I/O Station - indicates whether the I/O Station holds a cartridge or is empty
- Date/Time - gives the current date and time set in the library

Under **Monitor** → **Library** → **Identity** are the following items:

- Service Tag - the service tag of the library
- Version - the current level of library firmware installed
- Vendor ID - Dell
- Product ID - TL2000/TL4000
- IP Address - current library IP address
- Active Slots - number of active slots in the library
- WWNN - World Wide Node Name of the library
- Library Mode - current library mode (Random or Sequential)

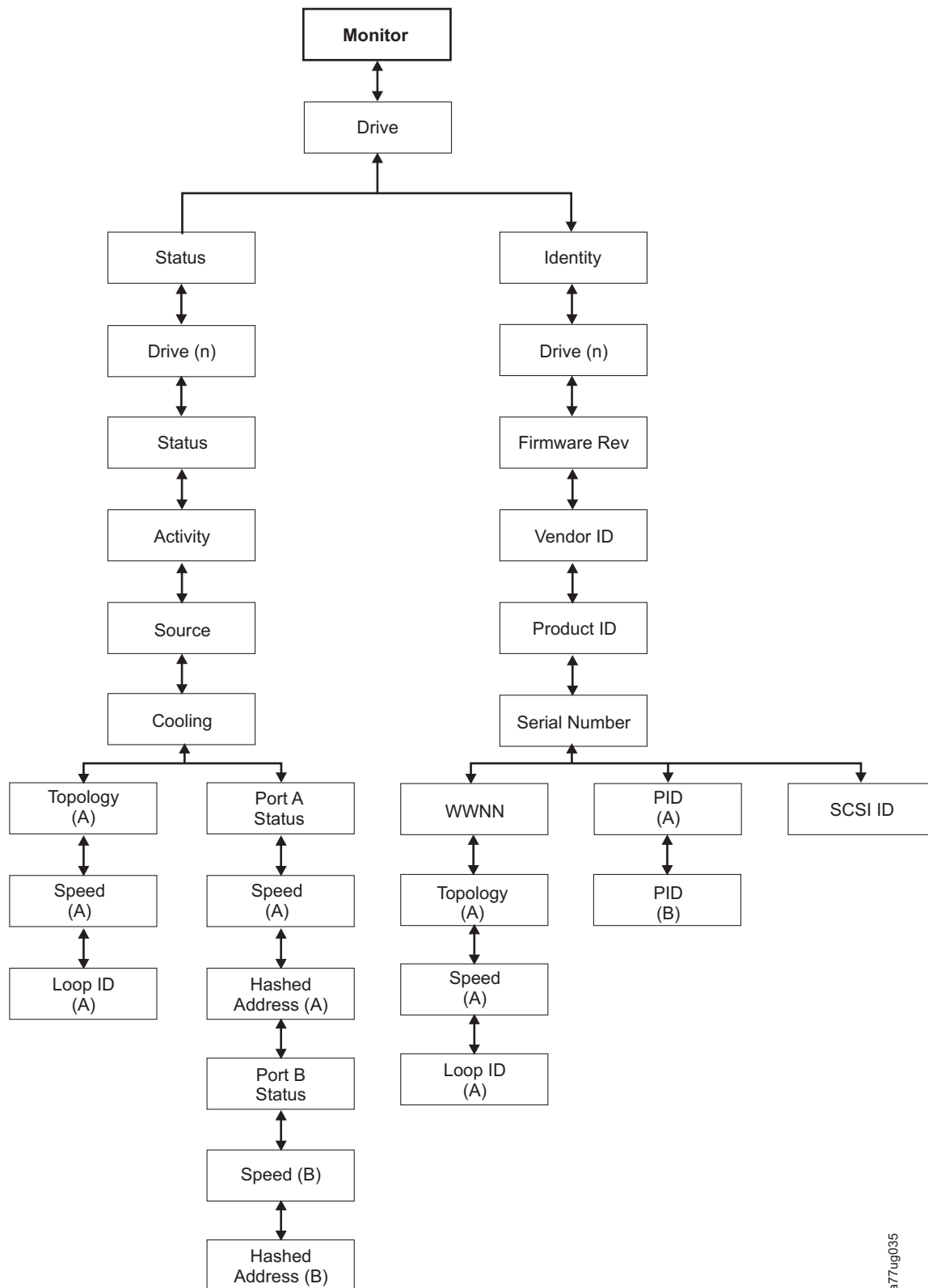
Under **Monitor** → **Library** → **Error Log**, you will have a list of errors logged by the library. The errors will be displayed beginning with the most recent error.

Under **Monitor** → **Library** → **Network** are the following items:

- IP Stack - the internet protocol currently being used by the library
- DHCP - Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
- IP Addresses - the internet addresses of the library
- Netmask - the Network Mask Address of the library
- Gateway - the Gateway Address of the library
- Ethernet - the speed of the ethernet interface
- Prefix Length - the length of the IP Address prefix
- Static IPv6 Address - the static IPv6 address of the library
- Link Local IPv6 Address - local link-only IPv6 address of the library
- Router assigned IPv6 Address - IPv6 address(es) discovered by the network router

Monitor: Drive

This menu item displays drive information and settings.



a77ug035

Figure 5-5. Monitor: Drive menu

Under **Status** and **Drive (n)** are the following items:

- Status - the current status of the drive
- Activity - the current action being performed by the drive

- Source - the serial number of the cartridge currently in the drive
- Cooling - indicates whether or not the drive fan is running
- Topology - the topology chosen for a fibre library (see “Fibre Channel Interface” on page 3-8)
- Speed - indicates the speed of the fibre channel (fibre library)
- Link - indicates the status of the fibre channel (fibre library)
- Hashed Address - an address calculated from the WWID

Under **Identity** and **Drive (n)** are the following items:

- Firmware Rev - the current level of drive firmware
- Vendor ID - Dell
- Product ID - drive inquiry string
- Serial Number - the drive serial number
- SCSI ID - the unique identifier assigned to a SCSI drive
- WWNN - the fibre library’s World Wide Node Name
- Topology - the topology chosen for the fibre channel drive
- Speed - indicates the speed of the fibre channel tape drive
- Loop ID - unique identifier assigned to a fibre channel tape drive
- PID - port identification

Monitor: Inventory

This menu item displays the current library inventory of a 4U library.

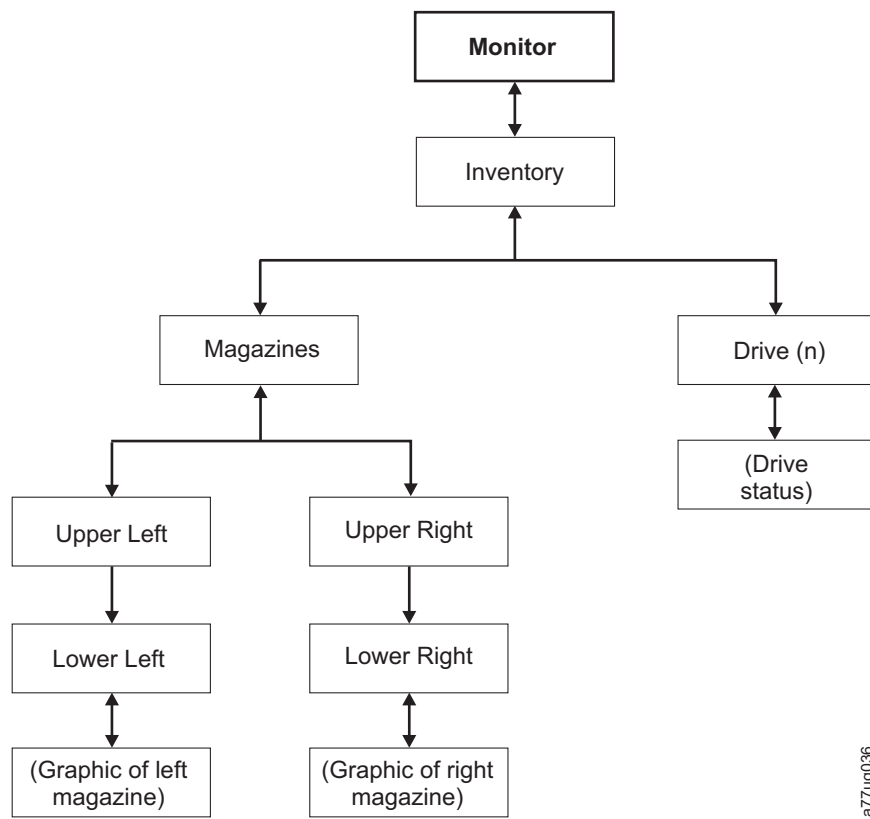


Figure 5-6. Example of a 4U Monitor: Inventory menu

a77ug036

Under **Magazine** choose one of the following to see a graphical representation of the cartridge magazine(s). Slots containing cartridges will be highlighted.

- Upper Left - choose this option to see the upper left magazine
- Upper Right - choose this option to see the upper right magazine
- Lower Left - choose this option to see the lower left magazine
- Lower Right - choose this option to see the lower right magazine

Press **SELECT** to display all empty slots and cartridge serial numbers in the associated magazine.

Under **Drive (n)** will be displayed the serial number of the cartridge currently in the drive or "Empty".

Magazines > Lower Left			
I/O 3	7	8	9
I/O 2	4	5	6
I/O 1	1	2	3
Idle Rand			

a77ug166

Figure 5-7. Overview of inventoried cartridges: Lower Left Magazine of a 4U Library

The black boxes are inventoried cartridges. Press the up and down keys to scroll. Note that this magazine has a 3-slot I/O Station. These slots can be changed to storage slots if needed. See "Configuring I/O Stations and Reserving Slots" on page 5-57.

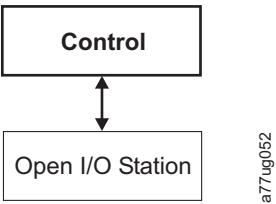
Control Menu

The Control Menu contains the following items:

- Open I/O Station
- Move Cartridges
- Magazine
- Re-Inventory

Control: Open I/O Station

Use this menu item to open the I/O Station.



a77ug052

Figure 5-8. Control: I/O Station menu

Attention: After closing the I/O Station, you must wait for the library to complete its inventory before proceeding with normal library operations.

Control: Move Cartridges

Use this menu item to move cartridges in the library.

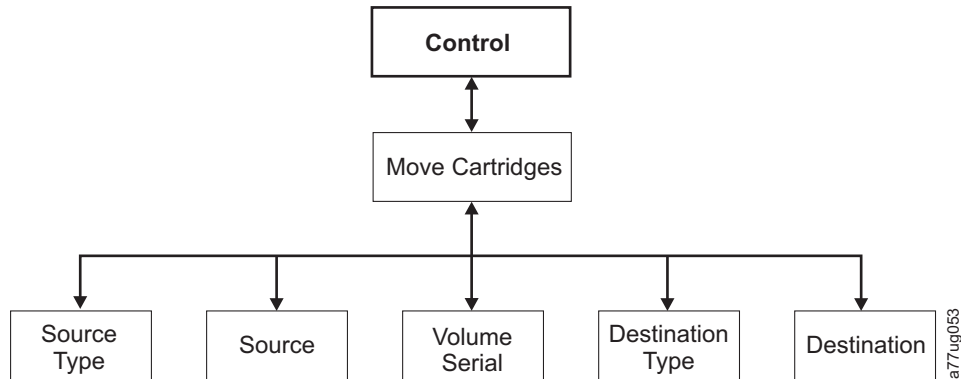


Figure 5-9. Control: Move Cartridges menu

To move a cartridge from point A to point B, you must make the following choices:

- Source Type - Drive, I/O station, magazine. Only the source type(s) that contain cartridges will be listed.
- Source - the choices start with the choice made in the preceding item and then advances through all available choices.

Note: If the Attention LED is ON due to a suspect cartridge, that cartridge will be identified by an exclamation point (!) when scrolling through the source cartridges.

- Volume Serial - the serial number of the cartridge
- Dest Type - the destination Drive, I/O station, magazine
- Dest - the choices start with the choice made in the preceding item and then advances through all available choices.

Control: Magazine

Use this menu item to unlock the cartridge magazines.

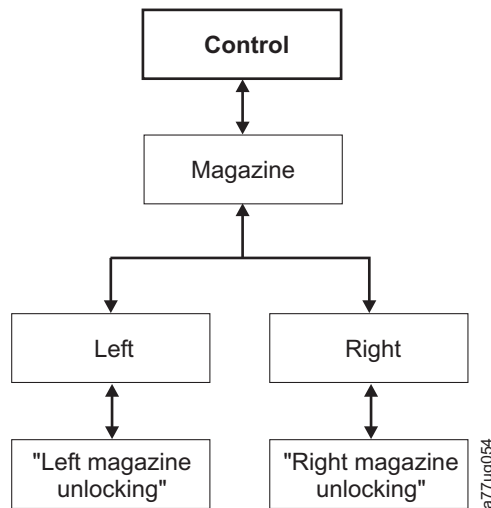


Figure 5-10. Control: Magazine menu

Choose "Left" or "Right" to unlock the corresponding cartridge magazine(s). The magazines can now be removed from the library by gently pulling each magazine out of the library. To replace a magazine, insert the back of the magazine into the front of the library and gently push the magazine into the library. The magazine will lock when inserted into the library.

If the magazines are not pulled out of the library within 15 seconds after they are unlocked, the command will cancel and you will have to repeat the process to unlock the magazines.

Control: Re-Inventory

Use this menu item to initiate a scan of the cartridges currently in the library.

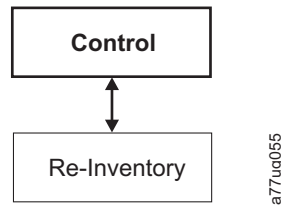


Figure 5-11. Control: Re-Inventory menu

Note: It may take up to five minutes to complete the library inventory.

Configure Menu

The Configure Menu is used during the initial setup of your library and when changes need to be made to your library's configuration. This menu contains the following items:

- Logical Libraries
- Library Settings
- Drive
- Network
- Set Access PIN
- Set Date and Time
- Path Failover
- Restore Defaults

Configure: Logical Libraries

Use this menu item to select the number of logical libraries.

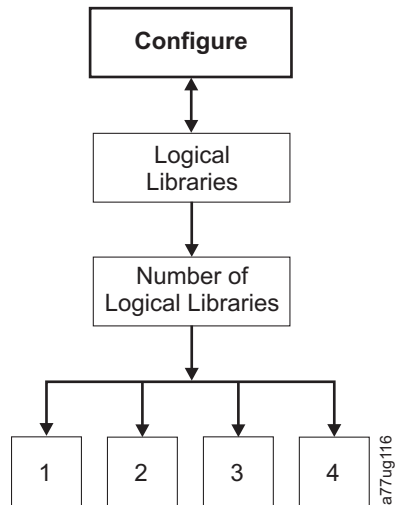


Figure 5-12. Configure: Logical Libraries menu

Note: This menu is only available on libraries with multiple drives.

Note: Whenever there is a hardware configuration change such as drives being swapped with different form factors (i.e. HH to FH or FH to HH), a library configuration change is needed. Reconfiguring the library by reassigning the amount of logical libraries will clear this issue.

Configure: Library

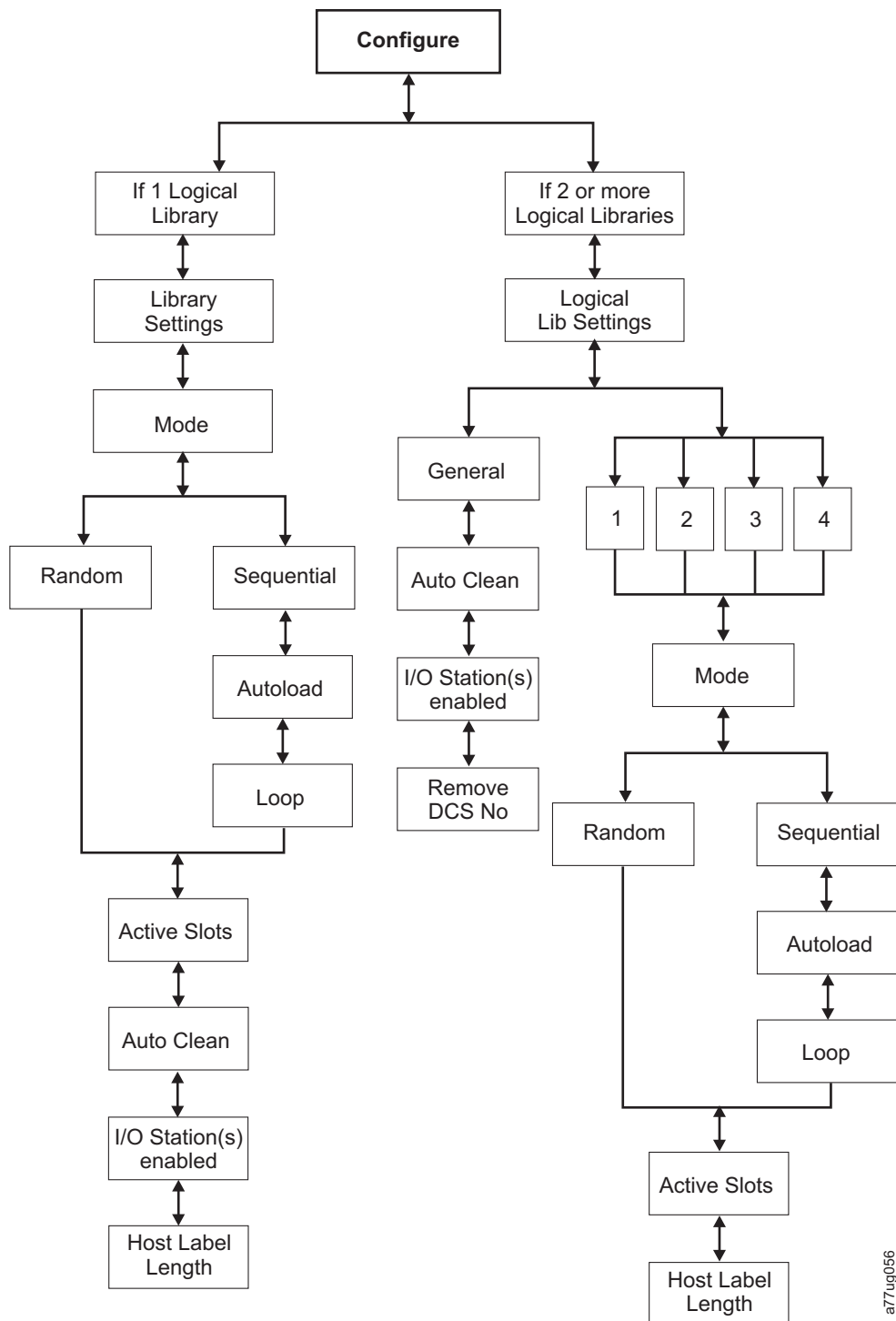


Figure 5-13. Configure: Library menu

The following library configuration items are in this menu:

- **Mode:**
 - **Random:** In random mode, the library allows the server's (host's) application software to select any data cartridge in any order.

- **Sequential:** In sequential mode, the library's firmware predefines the selection of the cartridges. After initialization, the firmware causes the library to select the first available cartridge found (counting from the I/O Station through slot 23) for loading into the drive.
- **Autoload:** Sequential mode with autoload mode ON loads the first available cartridge (slot with the lowest numerical value that contains a cartridge) automatically if the library powers ON with an empty drive.
- **Loop:** Sequential mode with loop mode ON loads the cartridge in the lowest numerical slot after the cartridge in the highest numerical slot has been filled and sent back to its home slot. This allows endless backup operations without user interaction.
- **Starting Sequential Mode**
 - Autoload Option:
 - If the Autoload option is set to **ON (Configure → Library → Autoload)**, the accessor will load the first cartridge (cartridge located in the slot with the lowest numeric value) found in the storage inventory area into the drive upon power ON of the library. If the library powers on with a cartridge already in the drive, sequential mode will start with that cartridge unless the host issues a rewind and unload command to the drive. In that case, the next cartridge in sequence will be loaded into the drive.
 - If the Autoload Option is **OFF**, sequential mode must be started by selecting the Move Cartridges option (**Control → Move Cartridges**) to load the first cartridge (or any cartridge) into the drive. Whatever cartridge is loaded into the drive, that is where the sequence starts from. For example, if a cartridge from the fifth lowest numeric storage slot containing a cartridge is loaded using the Move Cartridges option, after the host issues a rewind/unload command, the next cartridge loaded will be the cartridge from the next higher numeric slot. Cartridges need not be in contiguous slots.
 - Loop Option:

If the Loop option is set to **ON (Configure → Library → Loop)**, when the last cartridge (cartridge in the highest numeric slot) is unloaded and placed back into storage, the accessor will immediately start over again loading the first cartridge into the drive.
 - **Stopping Sequential Mode:** To stop sequential mode, use the Move Cartridges option from the Control menu (**Control → Move Cartridges**) to unload the drive. the next sequential cartridge will NOT be loaded. To restart sequential mode, use the same Control menu command to load a cartridge. The loading sequence will resume from that numeric slot in the cartridge inventory.
- **Active Slots** - the number of active slots you want to assign to each logical library.

Note: Slots can be reserved so that they are invisible to the host. It may be necessary to set the number of **Active Slots** to match the number of slots that are available to the ISV software.

- **Auto Clean** - Use this menu item to enable the Auto Clean function. All cleaning cartridges must have "CLNxxxLx" as part of the bar code.

The cleaning cartridge can be stored in any data cartridge slot.

Note: The universal cleaning cartridge has a bar code CLNUxxLx. This cleaning cartridge is used to clean all LTO generation tape drives.

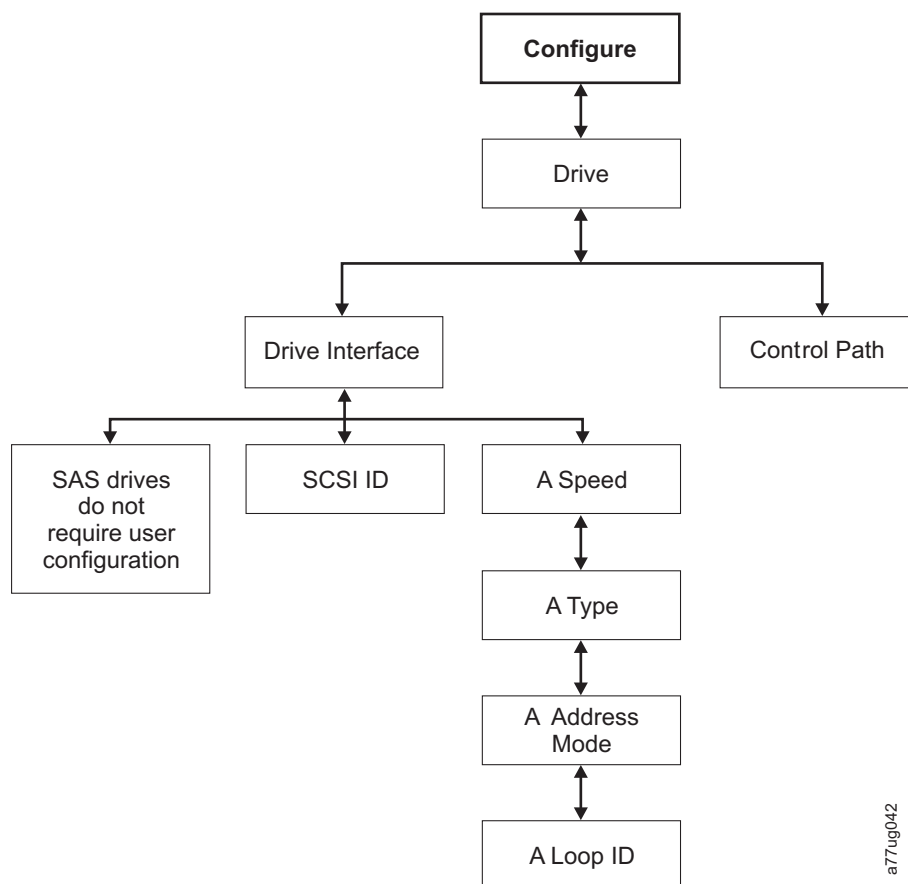
For Auto Clean to function, the following criteria must be met:

- On 4U libraries with library firmware of .80 or lower that still contain a Dedicated Cleaning Slot (DCS), or 4U libraries with library firmware higher than 1.95 that chose to retain the DCS in their library, a CLN cartridge must be present in that slot.
- On libraries that don't have a DCS, a storage slot must be reserved (RSVD) by reducing the active slot count by one.
- A cleaning cartridge (CLNxxxLx) must be placed or moved to the reserved slot.
- Auto Clean must be enabled.

Note: Cleaning cartridges must be replaced after 50 cleanings. The Web User Interface inventory screen will show the number of cleaning sessions remaining.

- **I/O Station(s) enabled** - The I/O Station(s) can be enabled (the default), or disabled so the stations can be utilized as storage slots.
- **Remove DCS No** - If the DCS has been removed, it cannot be reinstated. This option will no longer appear in the Operator Control Panel.
- **Host Label Length** - The Host Label Length is related to the Bar Code Labels appearing on the media being used. The default value is 8, but 6 can also be chosen.

Configure: Drive



a77ug042

Figure 5-14. Configure: Drive menu

The following items are in this menu:

- **Drive Interface** - use this to assign a SCSI ID to a SCSI drive or to assign a Port Speed, Port Type, and Loop ID to a Fibre Channel drive. SAS drives do not require user configuration. For more information on drive interfaces, refer to “Host Interfaces” on page 3-6.
- **Control Paths** - use this to enable the drive as a control path drive. Each logical library must have a control path drive; however, all drives in a logical library can be designated as control path drives.

Configure: Network

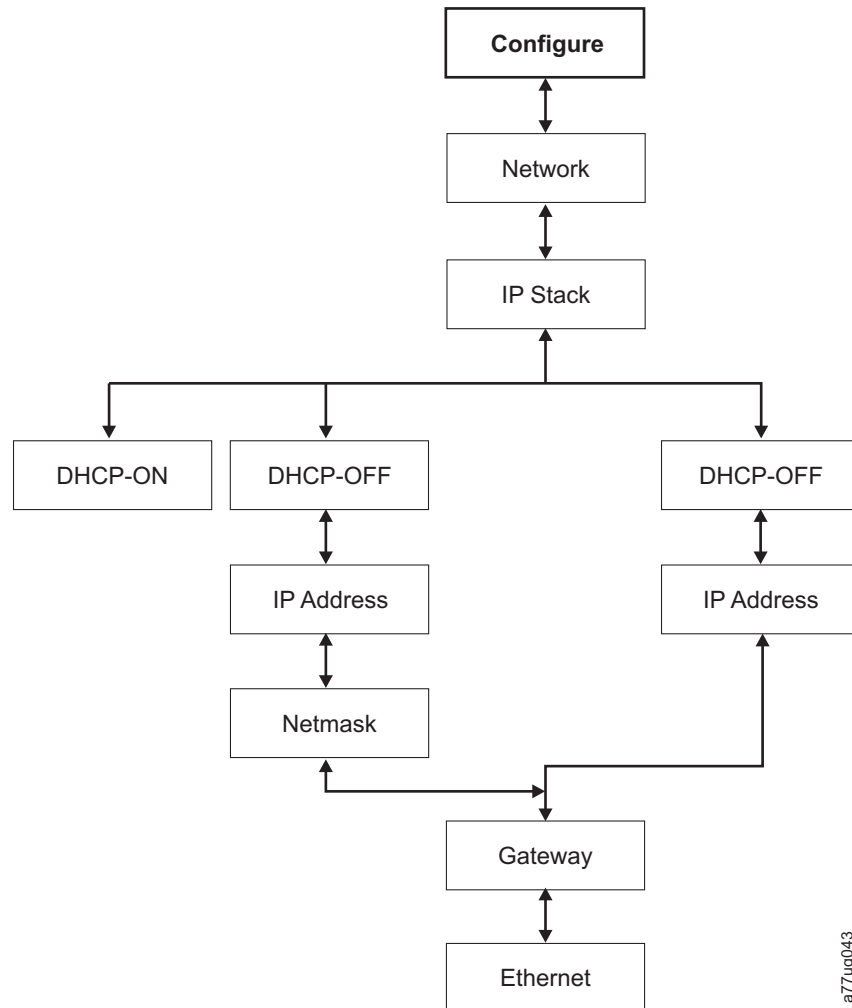


Figure 5-15. Configure: Network menu

Use these menu items to change the current network settings which allow you to access the library remotely via a web browser.

- **IP Stack** - Choose **IPv4 only**, **IPv6 only**, or **IPv4 & IPv6**.
- **IPv6 Only** and **Dual Stack IPv4 & IPv6** - Choose **Enable** Stateless Auto Config Address (Web User Interface) or Stateless Autoconfig (Operator Control Panel) if router assigned IPv6 IP addresses are desired. To view the router assigned IPv6 addresses after enabling Stateless Auto Config Address, do the following:
 - **Operator Control Panel (IPv6 Only): Monitor → Library → Network**

– **Web Interface (IPv6 Only and Dual Stack): Monitor Library → Library Identity**

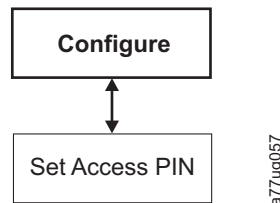
- **DHCP** - (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) If this is enabled, your library host will negotiate the connection with the library. If DHCP is disabled, the following information is necessary to establish the remote access.
- **IP Address** - the IP address of the library
- **Netmask** - the Network Mask address of the library
- **Gateway** - the Gateway address of the library
- **Ethernet** - the current speed setting of the ethernet interface

Configure: Set Access PIN

Use this menu item to enable/disable, set or change the Access PIN (personal identification number) which is used to restrict access to the Control, Configure, and Service menus.

The Operator Control Panel (OCP) pin is turned off by default, but it is strongly recommended to be enabled if your environment requires unit security. Enabling the OCP pin feature prevents the unit settings from being tampered with. Users will be allowed to review the library status and manipulate media without entering the OCP pin.

If a unit administrator needs to make a configuration change in the unit, the OCP will ask for the 4-digit code in order to allow access to make changes. Once all the changes are completed the pin access will expire after 5 minutes of inactivity in the OCP (there is no log-out function in the library for this feature). A library reboot is recommended after making configuration changes to the library.



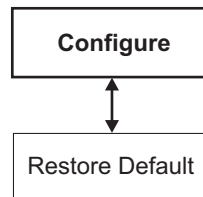
a77ug057

Figure 5-16. Configure: Set Access PIN menu

Configure: Restore Defaults

Use this menu item to restore the factory default settings.

When reducing the number of drives in your library, factory default settings must be restored to remove the Attention LED on the front panel and the exclamation mark on the Home screen indicating that a drive is missing.



a77ug045

Figure 5-17. Configure: Restore Defaults menu

Important: Restoring factory defaults will wipe out all the previous configuration data. The user must restore factory defaults when library drive configurations are

changed from a LTO full height to half height configuration in order for the library to operate properly. If just adding a new drive to the configuration the restore factory default is not required - only a power cycle of the library.

Table 5-3. Factory Default Settings

Restored Item	Default Setting*	Comments
Autoclean	Disabled	
Logical Libraries	1	
Active Slots	Maximum	
I/O Slots	Enabled	
Encryption	None	
DHCP	Enabled	
IPv4/IPv6 Default Setting	IPv4 Only	
Bar Code Label Length	8	
SNMP	Disabled	
Email Notifications	None	
User Access		Restore from Operator Control Panel or Web User Interface
Admin	secure	(default)
Library Mode	Random	
Library Name	Default	(Depends on MAC Address)
Logs & Traces	Continuous	
Path Failover Key	No change	Key is protected
Drives		
Power	Power On	(All drives)
Drive 1 SCSI-ID	4	SCSI Drives
Drive 2 SCSI-ID	5	SCSI Drives
Drive 3 SCSI-ID	6	SCSI Drives
Drive 4 SCSI-ID	8	SCSI Drives
Drive 1 Loop-ID	4	FC Drives Arbitrated Loop
Drive 2 Loop-ID	5	FC Drives Arbitrated Loop
Control Path Drive	Drive 1 only	
Partitions	None	
Reserved Slots	2U: 24, 4U: 48	
IPv6 Stateless Autoconfig	Off	
Note: * = all settings at library firmware level 4.xx and greater		

In some cases, (such as Library Mode), the entry of one option precludes any other options from being selected. In such cases, the details of the non-applicable options are not shown.

Configure: Set Date and Time

Use this menu item to set the current date and time in your library.

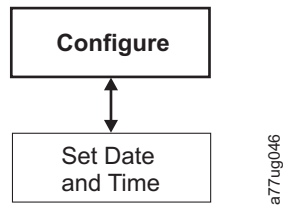


Figure 5-18. Configure: Set Date and Time menu

Configure: Path Failover

Use this menu item to enter the Path Failover Feature Activation key (4U library only).

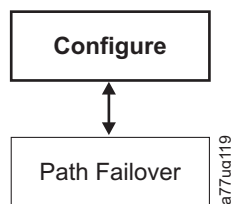


Figure 5-19. Configure: Path Failover

The Path Failover feature is available for select LTO 4 tape drives. Path Failover is not supported for half height drives. For more information, refer to the *Dell PowerVault TL4000 Failover Configuration Guide*, included with the library documentation.

Service Menu

The 2U/4U library is always online, except for when the user enters the Service Library area. A warning message appears stating that the library should be taken offline from the host before performing any Service functions. It is up to the operator to ensure that it is taken offline by phoning the host operator or other means of communication. Before performing any service functions, ensure the host is not performing any data writing or retrieval.

The **Service Menu** contains the following items:

- Library Verify - an overall library diagnostic
- Run Tests - other library diagnostics
- Service - diagnostics and procedures for servicing the drive
- Display Contrast - setting the display from light to dark

Service: Library Verify

This is an overall diagnostic that exercises all library components. To run the Library Verify test, complete the following procedure.

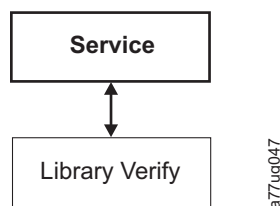


Figure 5-20. Service: Library Verify menu

1. When prompted by the Operator Control Panel display and the I/O Station opens, insert a blank or scratch data cartridge.
2. Close the I/O Station by pushing it back into the library.
3. While the test is running, the Operator Control Panel will display library status.
 - If the test PASSES, resume normal library operations.
 - If the test FAILS, an error code will be displayed. Make note of the error, then refer to Chapter 7, "Troubleshooting," on page 7-1.
 - When prompted by the Operator Control Panel display and the I/O Station opens, remove the cartridge used in the test.
 - Close the I/O Station by pushing it back into the library.
 - Press **Cancel** to exit the Library Verify screen.

Note: Library Verify requires a piece of scratch media to perform the test. Once the test has been initiated, the user must complete the test.

Service: Run Tests

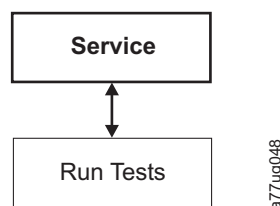


Figure 5-21. Service: Run Tests menu

The following library diagnostics are available in this menu:

- **System Test** - this test exercises library components by moving customer data cartridges from slots to drives and back to slots. No data is written or read from the customer tapes. To run this test successfully, the library must contain at least one data cartridge for every drive present in the library.
- **Slot to Slot Test** - The Slot To Slot test will move each resident data cartridge from one slot to another, for each test cycle requested. When completing the Slot To Slot test, you will need to **Inventory** your library before placing it back online, since this test scrambles the cartridge slot locations.

Note: After running the Slot to Slot Test, the library will need to be re-inventoried.

Service: Service (Drives)

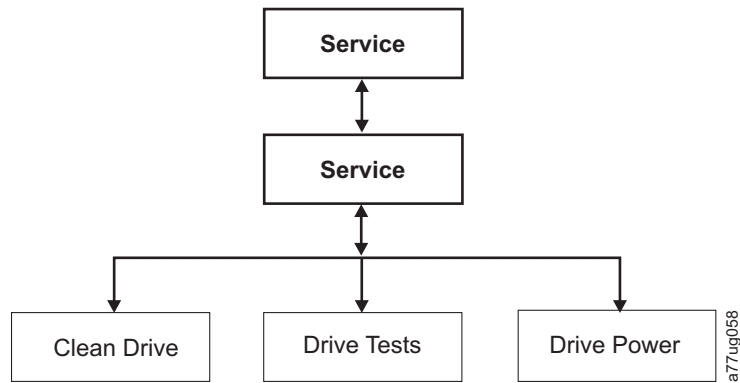


Figure 5-22. Service: Service menu

The following drive diagnostics and service procedures are available in this menu:

- **Clean Drive** - The accessor takes the cleaning cartridge from the dedicated cleaning cartridge slot (DCS), or previously reserved slot if no DCS is available, and inserts it into the drive. After the cleaning is complete, the accessor removes the cleaning cartridge from the drive and returns it to the dedicated cleaning cartridge slot or reserved slot.
- **Drive Tests** - Power On Self Test (POST), Normal Read/Write Test, Head Test, Media Test
 1. Navigate to the desired test (**Service** → **Service** → **Drive Tests**). Choose the drive if more than one is installed.
 2. Follow the instructions, and, if required, insert a blank or scratch cartridge into the I/O Station when requested.
 3. The test will execute.
 - If the test **PASSES**, resume normal library operations.
 - If the test **FAILS**, an error will be displayed. Make note of the error, then refer to “Isolating Drive Sled Problems” on page 7-10.
 4. Remove the cartridge from the I/O Station, if needed, then close the I/O Station.
 5. Press **Cancel** to exit the screen.
- **Drive Power** - use this item to turn drive power ON and OFF

Note: When configuration changes of a disabled drive are made from the Operator Control Panel (OCP), the drive powers ON after committing changes. When configuration changes of a disabled drive are made from the Web Interface (RMU), the drive does not power ON after committing changes.

Service: Display Contrast

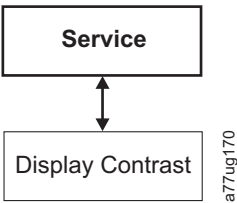


Figure 5-23. Service: Display Contrast menu

The following display contrast settings are available in this menu:

- The numbers 1 through 10 will display, with 10 being the lightest shade and 1 being the brightest.

Service: Telnet Service Port

The Telnet Service Port menu item is to be used under the direction of the Dell Support Center. .

Web User Interface Menus

The following menus are available on the Web User Interface.

Table 5-4. Web User Interface Menus

<div><div></div><div>Monitor Library</div></div>	Library Identity
	Drives Identity
	Library Status
	Drives Status
	Inventory
<div><div></div><div>Configure Library</div></div>	General
	Logical Libraries
	Path Failover
	Encryption
	Drives
	Network
	User Access
	Date & Time
	Logs & Traces
	Event Notification
	Restore Defaults
<div><div></div><div>Manage Library</div></div>	Move Media
	Perform Inventory
	Release Magazine
<div><div></div><div>Service Library</div></div>	

Table 5-4. Web User Interface Menus (continued)

Clean Drive
 Advanced Diagnostics (for Service Personnel only)
 View Logs
 View Drive Logs
 Save Drive Dump
 Perform Diagnostics
 Key Path Diagnostics (if feature is available)
 Upgrade Firmware
 Reboot

Monitor Library Menu

The **Monitor Library** menu contains the following sub-menu items.

- “Monitor Library: Library Identity”
- “Monitor Library: Drive Identity” on page 5-31
- “Monitor Library: Library Status” on page 5-33
- “Monitor Library: Drive Status” on page 5-34
- “Monitor Library: Inventory” on page 5-37

Monitor Library: Library Identity

This page provides access to the static information about the library. No changes can be made from this page. Table 5-5 lists all available elements on the Library Identity page. An “X” indicates that the element displays for the specified library type.

Table 5-5. Library Identity page elements

Menu Item	Description	2U	4U
Service Tag	This is the unique identification number assigned by the manufacturer.	X	X
Product ID	This is the SCSI inquiry string of the library	X	X
Currently Installed Library Firmware	This is the current level of firmware installed on the library. For information on updating your firmware, refer to “Service Library: Upgrade Firmware” on page 5-54.	X	X
Bootcode Firmware Revision	This is the level of bootcode firmware currently installed on the library. Bootcode is the firmware that allows the library to begin initialization when it is powered ON.	X	X
IP Address	This is Internet Protocol Address assigned to your library.	X	X
MAC Address	This is the machine’s access code assigned to your library.	X	X
WWide Node Name	This is the Worldwide Node Name assigned to your library.	X	X
Logical Library x Library Mode	The Extended Logical Libraries Information table displays information about the logical libraries currently assigned in your library. For each logical library in your library, either Random or Sequential will be displayed.	X	X

Library Identity	
Serial Number	78A8156
Product ID	3573-TL
Currently Installed Library Firmware	3.05 / 2.30e
Bootcode Firmware Revision	0.50
IP Address	9.11.219.141
MAC Address	000E11800245
Library Mode	Random
WWide Node Name	2000000E11800245

a77ug068

Figure 5-24. The 2U library Monitor Library: Library Identity page

Library Identity	
Serial Number	78A8157
Product ID	3573-TL
Currently Installed Library Firmware	3.05 / 2.30e
Bootcode Firmware Revision	0.50
IP Address	9.11.219.162
MAC Address	000E111068B0
WWide Node Name	2000000E111068B0

Extended Logical Library Informations	
Logical Library 1	
Library Mode	Random
Logical Library 2	
Library Mode	Random

a77ug090

Figure 5-25. The 4U library Monitor Library: Library Identity page

Monitor Library: Drive Identity

This page provides the following detailed information about the drive. No changes can be made from this page. The displayed information will vary depending on the library model and drive type (SCSI, SAS, or Fibre Channel). Table 5-6 lists all available elements on the Drive Identity page. An "X" indicates that the element displays for the specified drive type.

Table 5-6. Drive Identity page elements

Menu Item	Description	2U Library			4U Library		
		SCSI	Fibre	SAS	SCSI	Fibre	SAS
Vendor ID	This identifies the manufacturer of the tape drive.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Product ID	This is the SCSI inquiry string of the tape drive.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Serial Number	This is the unique identification number of the tape drive that was assigned by the manufacturer.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Firmware Revision	This is the current level of firmware installed on the drive. For information on updating your firmware, refer to "Service Library: Upgrade Firmware" on page 5-54.	X	X	X	X	X	X
SCSI ID	This is the unique identifier assigned to the SCSI drive to enable it to receive communications from the host computer.	X			X		
Element Address	This is the unique identifier assigned to the drive that allows the host to recognize and communicate with the drive.	X	X	X	X	X	X

Table 5-6. Drive Identity page elements (continued)

Menu Item	Description	2U Library			4U Library		
		SCSI	Fibre	SAS	SCSI	Fibre	SAS
Control Path Drive	If the drive communicates all messages from the host to the library, then it is considered the control path drive. If the drive is the control path drive, this element displays "Yes." If not, this element displays "No." All drives in a logical library may be a control path drive.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Data Compression	If the drive is compressing data, this element displays "Yes." If not, this element displays "No."	X	X	X	X	X	X
Interface Type	This identifies Fibre Channel drives.		X			X	
Node Name	This is the Worldwide node Name assigned to a Fibre drive.		X			X	
Worldwide ID	This is the Worldwide ID assigned to a SAS drive.			X			X
Port A	This port is always "enabled."		X	X		X	X
Port Name	This is the name assigned to Port A on the drive.		X	X		X	X
Topology	This is the type of connection to the host.		X			X	
FC-AL Loop ID	This is the Fibre Channel - Arbitrated Loop ID of the drive.		X			X	
Speed	This is the current speed setting of the drive. Choices are Auto (where the drive will automatically negotiate the speed of the drive to match that of the server), 1Gb/s, 2Gb/s or 4 Gb/s.		X			X	
Port B	This port is enabled for full height SAS drives for failover only.			X			X

Drive Identity	1 (LUN)
Vendor ID	
Product ID	ULT3580-TD3
Serial Number	12D0019791
Firmware Revision	64D0
Element Address	256
Control Path Drive	No
Data Compression	Yes
Interface Type	Fibre Channel
Node Name	2001000E11800212
Port A	Enabled
Port Name	2002000E11800212
Topology	LN-Port
FC-AL Loop ID	04
Speed	auto
Port B	Disabled

Drive Identity	2 (LUN)
Vendor ID	
Product ID	ULT3580-TD3
Serial Number	1210092621
Firmware Revision	64D0
SCSI ID	5
Element Address	257

a77ug132

Figure 5-26. The 4U library Monitor Library: Drive Identity page showing one Fibre Channel drive (#1) and one SCSI drive (#2)

Monitor Library: Library Status

This page displays the dynamic information about the library, such as the current status of the components. No changes can be made from this page. Table 5-7 lists all available elements on the Library Identity page. An "X" indicates that the element displays for the specified library type.

Table 5-7. Library Status page elements

Menu Item	Description	2U	4U
Status	Library status is displayed using icons with text. A checkmark with the word "Ready" indicates the library is functioning properly. An exclamation point with the word "Caution" indicates the library can function, but is experiencing a problems. An X with the word "Error" indicates the library is not functioning because of a serious problem.	X	X
Cartridge in Transport	This identifies a cartridge that is currently being moved by the accessor. "None" is displayed if no cartridge is being moved.	X	X
Number of Moves	This is the number of times the accessor has moved a cartridge from Point A to Point B (for example, from a storage slot to a drive).	X	X
Total Power On Time	This is the total amount of time that the library has been powered ON.	X	X
Accessor Status	This is the current status of the accessor.	X	X
Left Magazine	This displays whether the left magazine is "Present" or "Not Present".	X	
Right Magazine	This displays whether the right magazine is "Present" or "Not Present".	X	
1. Left Magazine	This displays whether the lower left magazine is "Present" or "Not Present".		X

Table 5-7. Library Status page elements (continued)

Menu Item	Description	2U	4U
1. Right Magazine	This displays whether the lower right magazine is "Present" or "Not Present".		X
2. Left Magazine	This displays whether the upper left magazine is "Present" or "Not Present".		X
2. Right Magazine	This displays whether the upper right magazine is "Present" or "Not Present".		X

Library Status At 11:10:10 Library Time	
Status	Ready
Cartridge In Transport	None
Number Of Moves	40
Total Power On Time	57d 1h 16min
Accessor Status	Ready
Internal Temperature	34.3 °C
1. Left Magazine	Present
1. Right Magazine	Present
2. Left Magazine	Present
2. Right Magazine	Present

Refresh

Figure 5-27. The 4U library Monitor Library: Library Status page

Monitor Library: Drive Status

This page provides the following detailed dynamic information about the drive in the library. No changes can be made from this page. The displayed information will vary depending on the library model and drive type (SCSI, SAS, or Fibre Channel). Table 5-8 lists all available elements on the Drive Status page. An "X" indicates that the element displays for the specified drive type.

Table 5-8. Drive Status page elements

Menu Item	Description	2U Library			4U Library		
		SCSI	Fibre	SAS	SCSI	Fibre	SAS
Status	This is the current status of the drive. A checkmark indicates that the drive is operating properly. An exclamation point indicates that the drive is operating but has a problem. An X indicates that the drive is not operational because of a serious problem.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Cartridge in Drive	This is the serial number of the cartridge currently in the drive. If the drive does not contain a cartridge, "None" is displayed.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Drive Error Code	If the drive has generated an error code, it is displayed here. If the drive has not generated an error, "No Error" will be displayed.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Cooling Fan Active	This indicates whether the drive cooling fan is "On" or "Off".	X	X	X	X	X	X
Drive Activity	This indicates whether or not the drive is operating.	X	X	X	X	X	X

Table 5-8. Drive Status page elements (continued)

Menu Item	Description	2U Library			4U Library		
		SCSI	Fibre	SAS	SCSI	Fibre	SAS
Port A Status	This indicates whether Port A is logged on or out.		X	X		X	X
Port Name	This is the name assigned to Port A on the drive.		X			X	
Speed	This is the current speed setting of the drive. Choices are Auto (where the drive will automatically negotiate the speed of the drive to match that of the server), 1Gb/s, 2Gb/s, or 4Gb/s.		X			X	
Topology	This is the type of connection to the host. N-Port ID		X			X	
FC-AL Loop ID	This is the Fibre Channel - Arbitrated Loop ID of the drive.		X			X	
Hashed SAS Address	The Hashed SAS address is a value which is calculated from the WWID for use on the SAS interface			X			X
Encryption Status	This shows the status of any encryption that is enabled on the drive.		X	X		X	X
Encryption method	This is the type of encryption that is enabled on the drive.		X	X		X	X
Key Path	This is the path used for transferring an encryption key. This setting is dependent upon the encryption method selected.		X	X		X	X
BOP policy	This indicates whether the Beginning of Partition (BOP) policy is enabled or disabled.		X	X		X	X
Density reporting	This setting determines whether the drive shows or masks encryption.		X	X		X	X

Drive 1 Status At 11:11:05 Library Time	
Status	Testing
Cartridge In Drive	None
Drive Error Code	No Error
Cooling Fan Active	On
Drive Activity	Ready
Port A Status	Ready, connected
Speed	3.0 Gb/s
Hashed SAS address	751651
Port B Status	Not ready, not connected
Speed	-
Hashed SAS address	000000
Encryption Status	
Encryption method	Disabled
Key path	Default by method
BOP policy	Disabled
Density reporting	Other

Drive 2 Status At 11:11:05 Library Time	
Status	Ready
Cartridge In Drive	None
Drive Error Code	No Error
Cooling Fan Active	On
Drive Activity	Ready

Drive 3 Status At 11:11:05 Library Time	
Status	Ready
Cartridge In Drive	None
Drive Error Code	No Error
Cooling Fan Active	On
Drive Activity	Ready
Port A Status	Login complete
Port Name	2008000E111068B0
Speed	2 Gb/s
Topology	N-Port
N-Port ID	030300
Encryption Status	
Encryption method	Disabled
Key path	Default by method
BOP policy	Disabled
Density reporting	Other

Refresh

a77ug093

Figure 5-28. The 4U library Monitor Library: Drive Status page

Term Definitions:

- **BOP (Beginning of Partition):** BOP (Beginning of Partition) is a SCSI term, which in a single partition format is the same as beginning of tape. It means that policy is determined on writes at LB zero. Appending to a tape [or overwriting at a non-zero LB] does not change the policy already in use for that tape.
- **Key Path:** This is the avenue where key resolution is performed. This is generally left to be determined by method (and is the same), but can be set differently for some hybrid modes.
- **Density Reporting:** This affects host reporting of density and is included to support legacy needs for transparency. The default of not masking encrypted densities means that the host can see a different density code for encrypted vs non-encrypted tapes (x72 [enc] as opposed to x52 [non-enc]). This feature masks this so the drive reports the primary density only.
 - **Expected Value:** Normally this is set to the drive default (which is to show encr density).
 - **Value of Reporting this Feature:** If a legacy setup will not work with a new density code being reported [for whatever software reason] this will allow transparent encryption to still be used.

Monitor Library: Inventory

This page provides detailed information about the tape inventory in the library. A summary of each magazine is shown. To get detailed information about the cartridges that reside in a magazine, click on the + button. This will expand the display for the magazine. To determine whether a cartridge is encrypted, refer to the Comments column in the Cartridge Details screen.

Inventory As Of 14:02:04 Library Time

Drive Inventory

Drive	Status	Label	Source
1	Empty	-----	

Magazine Inventory

8	9	10	11	<div>+<div><div></div><div></div></div></div>
4	5	6	7	
IO-Station	1	2	3	

23	22	21	20	<div>+<div><div></div><div></div></div></div>
19	18	17	16	
15	14	13	12	

Refresh

a77ug067

Figure 5-29. The 2U library Monitor Library: Inventory page

10
11
12
13

+
Cartridge details for 2. Left Magazine

1. Right Magazine - Slot inventory

33	32	31	30	<div>1. Right Magazine</div>
29	28	27	26	
25	24	23	22	

+
Cartridge details for 1. Right Magazine

2. Right Magazine - Slot inventory

CLNI07L1	45	44	43	42	<div>2. Right Magazine</div>
41	3SR023L3	40	39	38	
37	36	35	34		

-
Cartridge details for 2. Right Magazine

Slot #	Attn	Status	In Drive	Label	Media Loads	Comment
I/O Station 1	Closed	Empty		-----		
I/O Station 2	Closed	Empty		-----		
I/O Station 3	Closed	Empty		-----		
1		Empty		-----		
2		Empty		-----		
3		Empty		-----		
4		Empty		-----		
5		Full, Gen. 4		3IR115L4	6773	Encrypted
6		Full, Gen. 4		3FR016L4		
7		Full, Gen. 4		3IR101L4	3505	Encrypted
8		Empty		-----		
9		Empty		-----		

a77ug099

Figure 5-30. The 4U library Monitor Library: Inventory page

Configure Library Menu

The **Configure Library** menu contains the following sub-menu items:

- “Configure Library: General”
- “Configure Library: Logical Libraries” on page 5-40
- “Configure Library: Path Failover” on page 5-40
- “Configure Library: Encryption” on page 5-41
- “Configure Library: Drives” on page 5-43
- “Entering Library Network Settings” on page 4-24
- “Configure Library: User Access” on page 5-46
- “Configure Library: Date & Time” on page 5-47
- “Configure Library: Logs & Traces” on page 5-48
- “Configure Library: Event Notification” on page 5-48
- “Configure Library: Restore Defaults” on page 5-49

Configure Library: General

This page allows you to make changes to general library configuration elements. As changes are made, they will only be applied after the **Apply Selections** or the **Submit** button is selected. After making the selection, a warning page will inform

you of the impact of the proposed change. In some cases a pop-up screen will ask for confirmation. Many changes will also require a library reboot.

Table 5-9. Configure Library: General page elements

Menu Item	Description	2U	4U
Library Name	This is a name that is assigned to your library for ease of identification.	X	X
I/O Station	The I/O Station defaults to I/O Station Enabled . Choosing Disabled (no checkmark) adds one more storage slot to the 2U library, and 3 more storage slots to the 4U library. When the I/O Station is disabled, removing or adding media to the library must be performed by releasing the left and/or right magazine(s).	X	X
Auto Clean	Auto Clean defaults to Disabled . For Auto Clean to function, a cleaning cartridge (CLNxxxLx) must be resident in a reserved library slot and Auto Clean must be enabled (turned on).	X	X
Bar Code Label Length Reported To Host	The default bar code label length is 8 , but can be set to 6. The bar code label length is a "reported" length. This setting will cause the host computer to only see the first 6 characters of the label or all 8 characters. This setting does not affect the bar code label that is shown on any of the library user interfaces (always shows all 8 characters).	X	X

Table 5-10. Configure Library: Specific page elements

Menu Item	Description	2U	4U
Library Mode	Choices are Random and Sequential. If you choose Sequential, you may also activate Autoload and/or Loop. If there is more than one logical library, there is a Library Mode entry for each logical library.	X	X
Active Slots	It may be necessary to modify the number of active slots to agree with the number of slots allowed by your host software. To modify the number of active slots in your library, click on the drop down list and select the number of slots you want active in your library. Also, the Auto Clean function requires the cleaning cartridge to be in a DCS or reserved slot. Reserved slots are created by reducing the number of active slots.	X	X

General

Library Name: ATLANTA139

I/O Station Enabled: ☒

Auto Clean Enabled: ☒

Barcode Label Length Reported To Host: 8

Extended Configuration for Logical Libraries

Logical Library 1

Library Mode: ☒ Random ☐ Sequential ☐ Autoload ☐ Loop

Active Slots: 8

Logical Library 2

Library Mode: ☒ Random ☐ Sequential ☐ Autoload ☐ Loop

Active Slots: 12

Logical Library 3

Library Mode: ☒ Random ☐ Sequential ☐ Autoload ☐ Loop

Active Slots: 23

Refresh Apply Selections

Figure 5-31. The 4U library Configure Library: General and Extended page

Configure Library: Logical Libraries

To partition your multi-drive library, select the number of logical libraries you would like to create in your library, then click **Submit**.

One cartridge magazine cannot be assigned to two logical libraries. If you partition a multi-drive library, each of the magazines must be assigned to a logical library on a magazine boundary. The entire magazine must be part of one logical library only. In a fully populated 4U library with two logical libraries, resource assignments will be as follows:

- Logical Library 1 will contain Drive 1 and the left cartridge magazines.
- Logical Library 2 will contain Drive 2 and the right cartridge magazines.

The I/O Station and the reserved slot (or dedicated cleaning slot (DCS) if one is assigned) are shared among all logical libraries.

Logical Libraries

Number of Logical Libraries: 3 Currently configured: 3

Refresh Submit

Figure 5-32. The 4U library Configure Library: Logical Libraries page

Configure Library: Path Failover

This page allows the user to enter the Path Failover feature activation key. The Path Failover feature is available for select LTO 4 tape drives. Path Failover is not supported for half height drives. For more information, refer to the *Dell PowerVault TL4000 Failover Configuration Guide*, included with the library documentation.

Figure 5-33. The 4U library Configure Library: Path Failover page

After clicking **Activate**, this page will display if you have entered the feature key correctly.

Figure 5-34. Path Failover license verification page

Note: Follow the instructions in the *Dell PowerVault TL4000 Failover Configuration Guide* to configure your environment for failover.

Configure Library: Encryption

Note: Application Managed Encryption (AME) does not require a key. Library Managed Encryption requires a license key. The customer should contact their TSR (technical sales representative) to purchase this feature.

Prerequisites for Application Managed Encryption:

- SAS and Fibre Channel LTO Ultrium 4 Tape Drive (Full Height or Half Height)

Note: Fibre Channel is full height drive only.

- Ultrium 4 Tape Cartridge
- Library firmware level 5.80 or higher
- Drive firmware level 77BE or higher
- Tape backup software application that supports LTO4 encryption

Prerequisites for Library Managed Encryption:

- SAS and Fibre Channel LTO Ultrium 4 Tape Drive (Full Height or Half Height)

Note: Fibre Channel is full height drive only.

- Ultrium 4 Tape Cartridge
- Library firmware level 5.80 or higher
- Drive firmware level 77BE or higher
- Dell Encryption Key Manager application

Setting or Changing a Drive's Method of Encryption

1. Enter your library's IP Address in an internet browser address field and press ENTER.
2. Log in to the Web User Interface. Refer to "Login" on page 2-5.
3. Expand **Configure Library** in the left navigation pane.
4. Click **Encryption**.

Encryption is not supported for this Logical Library!

Encryption		
Feature Activation Key	<input type="text"/>	- <input type="text"/> - <input type="text"/>

a77ug199

Figure 5-35. Feature Activation Key screen

5. On the **Encryption** screen, enter the **Feature Activation Key** to make available the library managed encryption options.
6. Click **Activate** to save the key and expand the screen for additional encryption settings.

Encryption	
Feature Activation Key	Encryption is currently licensed on this library.
Enable SSL for EKM	<input type="checkbox"/>
Encryption Setting for Logical Library 1	
Encryption method	Library Managed Encryption
Encryption policy	Encrypt All
EKM Server Setting	
Primary IP address (IPv4 or IPv6)	9.11.221.242
Primary TCP port	3801
Secondary IP address (IPv4 or IPv6)	0.0.0.0
Secondary TCP port	3801
Encryption Setting for Logical Library 2	
Encryption method	Library Managed Encryption
Encryption policy	Encrypt All
EKM Server Setting	
Primary IP address (IPv4 or IPv6)	9.11.221.242
Primary TCP port	0
Secondary IP address (IPv4 or IPv6)	0.0.0.0
Secondary TCP port	0

a77ug190

Figure 5-36. Configure Library: Encryption Feature configuration screen

7. Select **Enable SSL for EKM** to enable Secure Sockets Layer for the Dell Encryption Key Manager application.
8. Select an **Encryption method** for each logical library.
 - Without an encryption license key, select **None** or **Application Managed Encryption**.
 - With an encryption license key, select **Library Managed Encryption**.
9. Select an **Encryption policy** for each logical library.
 - **Encrypt All**: This is the default policy. It encrypts all cartridges using the default data keys specified in the EKM. This setting applies to all drives in the TL2000/TL4000 logical library.
 - **Internal Label - Selective Encryption**: Check your tape backup software application documentation to see if this feature is supported.

- **Internal Label - Encrypt All:** Check your tape backup software application documentation to see if this feature is supported.
10. A primary and secondary EKM server can be set for each logical library. Each partition has its own Encryption and EKM settings. Maintaining primary and secondary EKM servers is desired for maximum availability of encrypted backup and recovery. These settings are required for Library Managed Encryption only. Enter the **EKM Server Setting** information.
 - **Primary IP address (IPv4 or IPv6):** Enter the IP address of the primary EKM server.
 - **Primary TCP port:** After entering the Primary IP address, the library will automatically set the value of the Primary TCP port.
 - **Secondary IP address (IPv4 or IPv6):** Enter the IP address of the secondary EKM server.
 - **Secondary TCP port:** After entering the **Secondary IP address**, the library will automatically set the value of the **Secondary TCP port**.

Note: The Default Port for TCP (SSL disabled) is **3801**. The Default Port for SSL is **443**. These values are the default values set by the library. They can be changed depending on the user configuration but the user has to make sure they match the EKM properties file.

Note: If SSL is enabled the encryption host configuration will request a SSL port instead of a TCP port. Review the *Dell PowerVault Encryption Key Manager User's Guide* for instructions to locate the appropriate port settings.
 11. Click **Activate** to apply the changes.
 12. Install the Dell Encryption Key Manager (EKM) application on your host. Refer to the Dell EKM documentation provided with your Encryption packet. The EKM IP address and EKM port will be provided to the user by the EKM application.

Configure Library: Drives

This page allows you to modify the current ID assigned to a SCSI or Fibre Channel drive. This page allows any drive in the library to be powered off by de-selecting the check mark in the Power On box. The displayed information will vary depending on the library model and drive type (SCSI, SAS, or Fibre Channel). Table 5-11 lists all available elements on this page. An "X" indicates that the element displays for the specified drive type.

Table 5-11. Drive Identity page elements

Menu Item	Description	2U Library			4U Library		
		SCSI	Fibre	SAS	SCSI	Fibre	SAS
SCSI ID	For each SCSI drive, click on the drop down list and select the number of the slot in which the drive is located.	X			X		
Power On	For each drive, click in the box to power ON the selected drive.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Control Path	The control path drive communicates messages from the host to the library. Select this option for each drive that you want to be a control path drive. At least one drive in each logical library must be designated as a control path drive.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Port A Configuration:							

Table 5-11. Drive Identity page elements (continued)

Menu Item	Description	2U Library			4U Library		
		SCSI	Fibre	SAS	SCSI	Fibre	SAS
Speed	For each Fibre Channel drive, click on the drop down list and select Automatic, 1Gb/s, 2Gb/s, or 4 Gb/s. Selecting Automatic will allow library speed to automatically negotiate to the current server speed.		X			X	
Port Type	For each Fibre Channel drive, click LN-Port, L-Port, or N-Port.		X			X	
Loop ID	This is the loop position number if the drive is in an arbitrated loop configuration.		X			X	
Port B Configuration:							
	Port B is supported for SAS full height drives only. Note: Port B is only supported for failover.			X			X

Drives

Drive 1 (Logical Library 1) ☒ Power On ☒ Control Path
Note: SAS drives do not require user configuration

Drive 2 (Logical Library 2) ☒ Power On ☒ Control Path

SCSI ID 6

Drive 3 (Logical Library 3) ☒ Power On ☒ Control Path

Port A Configuration

Speed Automatic

Port Type LN-Port

Loop ID 6

Port B Configuration Port not available

Refresh **Submit**

Figure 5-37. The Configure Library: Drive page for a 4U library


Note: When configuration changes of a disabled drive are made from the Operator Control Panel (OCP), the drive powers ON after committing changes. When configuration changes of a disabled drive are made from the Web Interface (RMU), the drive does not power ON after committing changes.

Configure Library: Network

This page shows the current network configuration of the library and allows modification to the configuration. When a change is requested, a pop-up box will ask to confirm the changes.

1. Click **Network** in the left navigation pane, to display the **Network** page.

Network			
Protocol Stack	IPv4 only ▼		
IPv4			
DHCP Address	<input type="checkbox"/> On		
Static address	9.11.219.140		
Network Mask	255.255.255.0		
Gateway address	9.11.219.1		
IPv6			
DHCP Address	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Stateless auto config address	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Static assigned address	0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0		
Prefix length	64		
Gateway address	0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0		
SNMP (IPv4)			
Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Target 1 - IP Address	0.0.0.0	Version	SNMPv1 ▼
Target 2 - IP Address	0.0.0.0	Version	SNMPv1 ▼
Target 3 - IP Address	0.0.0.0	Version	SNMPv1 ▼
Community Name	public		
Security User Name	initial		
Enable SSL for Web	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Ethernet Settings	Auto ▼		


 You will be required to login again if changes are made. If you change the IP address of the library, then you will need to use the new IP address when you attempt to access the library again.

a77ug074

Figure 5-38. Configure Library: Network page

2. Select a **Protocol Stack** - Choose **IPv4 only**, **IPv6 only**, or **Dual Stack IPv4 & IPv6**.

Note: When changes are made, the following Warning message will appear when the Submit button is clicked.



a77ug171

Figure 5-39. Warning screen

The library must be rebooted or the changes will not take place.

3. Enter **IPv4 settings (if applicable)**.
 - a. **DHCP Address** - Click this item **ON** to have the IP Address of your library automatically set by the library host computer. Leave unchecked and enter the appropriate information for the IP Address, Network Mask, and Gateway Address.
 - b. **IP Address** - An identifier for a computer or device on a TCP/IP network. Networks using the TCP/IP protocol route messages based on the IP address of the destination. The format of an IP address is a 32-bit numeric

address written as four numbers separated by periods. Each number can be zero to 255. For example, 1.160.10.240 could be an IP address.

- c. **Network Mask** - This address defines and limits users within a local network.
- d. **Gateway Address** - This address allows access outside the local network.
- 4. **Enter IPv6 settings (if applicable).**
 - a. **DHCP Address** - Click this item ON to have the IP Address of your library automatically set by the library host computer. Leave unchecked and enter the appropriate information for the IP Address, Network Mask, and Gateway Address.
 - b. **IPv6 stateless auto config** - Stateless Auto config is ALWAYS on (not defeatable).
 - c. **Static assigned IPv6 address** - Enter the assigned IPv6 address. The format of an IPv6 IP address is a 128-bit numeric address written as 8 groups of four numbers separated by colons.
 - d. **IPv6 prefix length** - The default prefix length is set to 64, but can be set to any length, depending upon the address used.
 - e. **IPv6 gateway address** - This address allows access outside the local network.
- 5. **Enter SNMP settings.**
 - a. **SNMP Enabled** - If you desire to have SNMP Traps sent to an IP address of your choosing, place a check in this box.
 - b. **SNMP Target 1-IP Address** - If SNMP Traps are enabled, enter an IP address where SNMP Traps are to be sent.
 - c. **SNMP Target 2-IP Address** - Enter an optional 2nd IP address where SNMP Traps are to be sent, or leave as 0.0.0.0.
 - d. **SNMP Target 3-IP Address** - Enter an optional 3rd IP address where SNMP Traps are to be sent, or leave as 0.0.0.0.
 - e. **Community Name** - Enter your preferred name, or leave as "public". The Community Name is limited to 33 alpha-numeric characters (A-Z, a-z, 0-9).
- 6. **Enable SSL for secure Web communication** - If you desire to have SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) enabled, place a check in this box.
- 7. **Select an Ethernet Setting** - You can disable Ethernet settings, manually enable them, or let another machine enable them by using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP). You can also set a specific speed for the Ethernet port or specify the library to automatically negotiate the speed. Ethernet Settings choices are: **Auto** (the default), **10 Mbit/Half**, **10 Mbit/Full**, **100 Mbit/Half**, **100 Mbit/Full**. Please refer to <http://support.dell.com> to determine the availability of manual Ethernet settings in your library's firmware.

Configure Library: User Access

This page allows the user to add and modify user accounts. See "Login" on page 2-5 for information on user types.

User Access	
Role	User
New Password (Enter Up To Ten Characters)
Repeat Password
Support Name	
Support Phone	
Support Email	

Refresh Submit

Figure 5-40. Configure Library: User Access page

The following elements are displayed on the **User Access** page.

Role The name associated with the chosen Access Level.

New Password

The password must be a maximum of ten characters (A-Z, a-z, 0-9, @, <space>, <hyphen>, <period>).

Repeat Password

Enter the New Password again.

Support name

The name of the individual within your company to contact for Web User Interface or library support.

Note: Only one support person can be configured for the entire tape library. The support person may or may not be one of the user, superuser, or admin account holders.

Support phone

The phone number of the individual within your company to contact for Web User Interface or library support.

Support email

The email address of the individual within your company to contact for Web User Interface or library support.

Configure Library: Date & Time

This page allows the user to set the time and date, and how it will be displayed.

Date & Time	
Time (24H)	17 : 41 : 11
Date	Month : 04 Day : 11 Year : 2006

Refresh Submit

Figure 5-41. The Configure Library: Date & Time page

Time (24H)

Using a 24-hour format, enter the current hour, minutes, and seconds.

Date

Enter the current month, day, and year.

Configure Library: Logs & Traces

This page allows service personnel to set the error log mode to **Off**, **Continuous**, or to **Stop trace at first error**.

Logs & Traces	
Error Log Mode	<input type="radio"/> Off <input checked="" type="radio"/> Continuous <input type="radio"/> Stop Trace At First Error
Trace Level	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Cmd <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Response <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Event <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Trace Data <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Low Level Trace <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Recovered Error <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hard Error
Trace Filter	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Main <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Drive <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CDB Interpreter <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Robotic <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Trace <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OCP Input <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OCP Output <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SCSI Module <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SDCI Module
<input type="button" value="Refresh"/> <input type="button" value="Submit"/>	

a77ug071

Figure 5-42. Configure Library: Logs & Traces page

It is recommended that you select **Continuous** for the **Error Log Mode** so that all information for logs and traces will be captured.

Note: The trace level and trace filter selection options are only changeable by Service personnel.

Configure Library: Event Notification

This page allows the user to enter information for event notification. When set up correctly, **Event Notification** allows the library to send an email to a designation individual when the library is experiencing a problem.

Event Notification	
Notify Errors	<input type="checkbox"/> On
Notify Warnings	<input type="checkbox"/> On
To Email Address	<input type="text"/>
Email Domain	<input type="text"/>
SMTP Server Address	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>
<input type="button" value="Refresh"/> <input type="button" value="Submit"/>	

a77ug065

Figure 5-43. Configure Library: Event Notification page

The following elements are displayed on the **Event Notification** page.

Notify Errors

Select this item to be notified of library errors via email.

Notify Warnings

Select this item to be notified of library warnings via email.

To E-mail Address

Enter the email address of the individual you would like to receive the errors and/or warnings.

Note: The TL2000/TL400 email address field cannot be empty (clear). The email notification setup allows the user to turn off the feature by deselecting the notify error and notify warnings boxes. The user can add an invalid email as long as the email address format is correct (i.e. a@xxx.xxx).

E-mail Domain

Enter the email domain name of the individual you would like to receive the errors and/or warnings.

SMTP Server Address

Enter the address of the email server of the individual you would like to receive the errors and/or warnings.

Configure Library: Restore Defaults

This page allows the user to reset the configuration to the factory defaults.

Note: The user must restore factory defaults when library drive configurations are changed from a LTO full height to half height configuration in order for the library to operate properly. If just adding a new drive to the configuration the restore factory default is not required - only a power cycle of the library.



Figure 5-44. Configure Library: Restore Defaults page

Manage Library Menu

Manage Library: Move Media

This page allows the user to move tape cartridges within the library. The source and destination are selected and then the MOVE button in the center of the screen is clicked to activate the move.

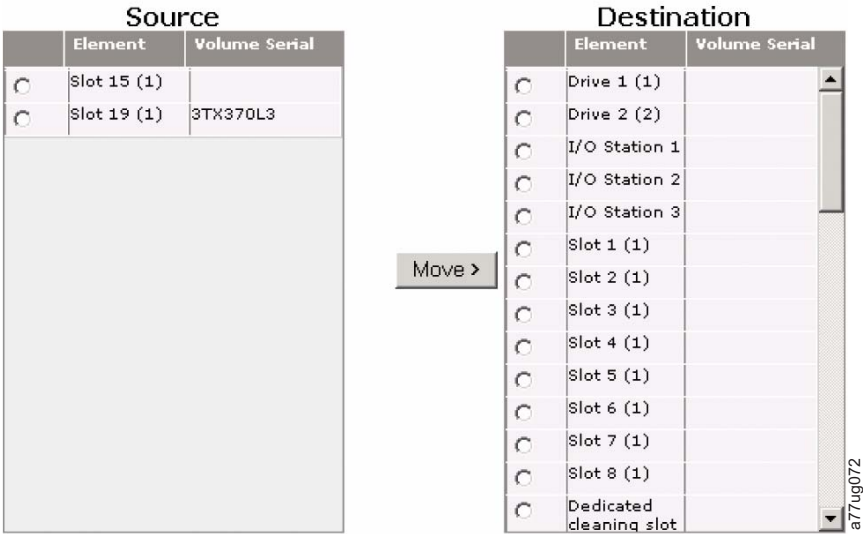


Figure 5-45. Manage Library: Move Media page

The following elements appear in the **Source** and **Destination** screens.

Element

In the **Source** screen, this identifies the library element that contains a cartridge. In the **Destination** screen, this identifies the library element that is empty and can receive a cartridge.

Volume Serial

In the **Source** screen, this element displays the serial number of the cartridge. In the **Destination** screen, this element contains no information.

Manage Library: Perform Inventory

This page provides the user to re-scan the library to determine the current media inventory.

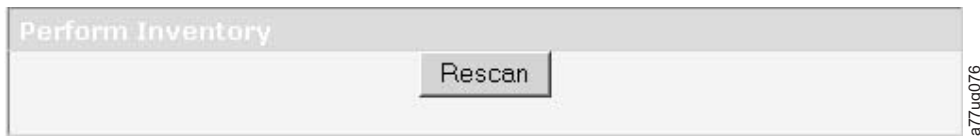


Figure 5-46. Manage Library: Perform Inventory page

Manage Library: Release Magazine

This page allows the user to release the right or left magazine from the library.

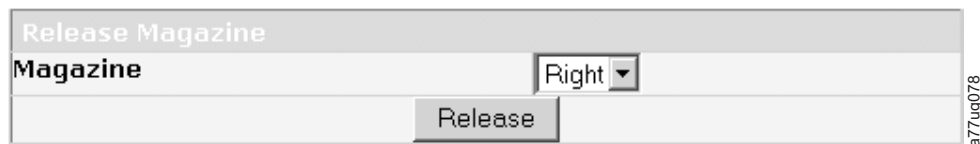


Figure 5-47. Manage Library: Release Magazine page

Note: To manually release a magazine, see “Releasing the Magazines Manually” on page 9-1. However, this manual process should only be used if the magazine cannot be released using the Operator Control Panel or the Web User Interface.

Service Library Menu

The 2U/4U library is always online, except for when the user enters the Service Library area. A warning message appears stating that the library should be taken offline from the host before performing any Service functions. It is up to the operator to ensure that it is taken offline by phoning the host operator or other means of communication. Before performing any service functions, ensure the host is not performing any data writing or retrieval.

Service Library: Clean Drive

This page allows the user to clean the tape drive. After the requested drive is cleaned, the screen will be greyed out. If you want to clean another drive, click on the Navigation bar “Service Library: Clean Drive” in the left column of your screen to activate the “Clean Drive” screen and select another drive. Click on “Clean”.

Clean Drive	
Slot #	45
Drive	3
Clean	

Figure 5-48. Service Library: Clean Drive page

Advanced Diagnostics (for Service Personnel Only)

This menu is for use by Service Personnel only.

View Logs

This page allows the user to view the library logs after entering the following:

- Log Type
 - **Error Trace:** Logs all the error messages
 - **Informational Trace:** Logs all the informational messages created as the library operates
 - **Warning Trace:** Logs all warning messages created by the library. Warning messages will not stop a library's operation but does remind the user of issues that may become a problem. Example: Invalid Media.
 - **Configuration Change Trace:** Logs any configuration changes made, such as changing/adding partitions, changing SCSI addresses, removing a DCS, etc.
 - **Standard Trace:** Logs all library operations
- Total Number of Entries
- Start Entry
- Number of Entries per Page

View Logs	
Log Type	Error Trace
Total Number Of Entries	4
Start Entry	1
Number Of Entries Per Page	5
<div>View</div> <div>Clear Log</div> <div>Dump Log</div>	

```
06.05.17 10:22:35.04 LIB/ERR <F1 00 > -- Drive Comm.-Err.
06.05.17 10:22:31.06 LIB/ERR <F2 00 > -- Drive Sled Miss.
06.05.17 10:21:46.75 LIB/ERR <F2 00 > -- Drive Sled Miss.
06.05.17 10:20:55.28 LIB/ERR <F2 02 > -- Drive Sled Miss.
```

Figure 5-49. Service Library: View Logs page

View Drive Logs

This menu item allows the user to view a drive log.

View Drive Logs	
Select Drive	1 ▾
Log Type	Error ▾
Total Number Of Entries	0
Start Entry	1
Number Of Entries Per Page	5
View	

a77ug096

Figure 5-50. Service Library: View Drive Logs screen

Save Drive Dump

This menu item allows a drive dump to be saved to the host computer. Once the **Save Drive Dump** button is clicked, the user will have the option of saving the drive dump to their hard drive. The progress status for the drive dump is shown on the System Status screen to the right of the main Web User Interface screen.

Note: Ensure that all the pop-up facilities on the web browser are set to enable pop-up boxes to appear. For example on the Microsoft Internet Explorer, under **Tools**, ensure that the Pop-up Blocker is turned OFF and **Internet Options -> Security -> Custom Level -> Downloads -> Automatic Prompting** for file **Downloads** and **File Downloads** are both Enabled.

Once saved on the hard drive, it can be e-mailed to Tech Support for analysis, if needed.

Note: The dump may take as long as 20 minutes to complete.

Save Drive Dump	
Select Drive	1 ▾
Save Drive Dump	

a77ug121

Figure 5-51. Service: Save Drive Dump

Service Library: Perform Diagnostics

Note: When running the "System Test", the library must contain at least the same number of data cartridges as there are drives in that library. For example, if your library has 4 drives installed, you must have 4 or more data cartridges in the library prior to the start of the test. If there are fewer data cartridges than drives in the library, an error message "Slot Empty" will occur, and the test will not complete successfully.

This page provides the system administrator with general tests to verify the usability and reliability of the library. The "System Test" will use resident data cartridges to test the load and unload capability of the drives, and ensure that the library mechanics are working satisfactorily. No data will be written to the cartridges and the cartridges will be returned to their normal slot location. The "Slot To Slot" test will move each resident data cartridge from one slot to another,

for each test cycle requested. When completing the “Slot To Slot” test, you will need to Inventory your library before placing it back online, since this test scrambles the cartridge slot locations.

The user selects the number of test cycles before starting the test from the EXECUTE button. To cancel the test before it completes the cycles, select the STOP button.

Perform Diagnostics

System Test

No Cycles1

Execute

Stop

a77ug075

Figure 5-52. Service Library: Perform Diagnostics page

Service Library: Perform Key Path Diagnostics

Please refer to <http://support.dell.com> to determine the availability of this feature.

Important: Ensure that library firmware and drive firmware are up to date before running the Key Path Diagnostic. Library firmware level must be greater than 6.xx. See “Verifying/Updating Firmware” on page 4-17.

The key path diagnostics test provides the ability to perform diagnostics on the encryption key path. Only drives that are set up for library managed encryption will be tested. All drives are listed in the test results, even if the drive is not enabled for library managed encryption.

The test consists of four parts:

- **Drive Test:** This test ensures that the LDI is functioning properly.
- **Ethernet Test:** In this test, the library pings each EKM server IP address.
- **EKM Path Test:** In this test, the library performs an EKM communication test on each EKM server IP address that passed the Ethernet Test.
- **EKM Config Test:** This test confirms that a drive is correctly configured in the EKM to service key requests.

To run the Key Path Diagnostic, complete the following procedure.

1. Log on to the Web User Interface. Refer to “Login” on page 2-5.
2. Click **Service**, then **Key Path Diagnostics**.

Key Path Diagnostics

Start tests

Drive	IP Address	Drive Test	Ethernet Test	EKM Path Test	EKM Config Test
1	9.11.221.224	Passed	Passed	Failed	N/A
	9.11.221.242	Passed	Passed	In Progress	
2	N/A				
	N/A				
3	9.11.221.204	Passed	Passed	Failed	N/A
	9.11.221.224	Passed	Passed	In Progress	

01/02/2008 15:25:40

a77ug193

Figure 5-53. Service Library: Perform Key Path Diagnostics page

3. Click **Start Tests**.

Each test will show a result of “Passed” or “Failed”. Test results will clear:

- When the test is rerun
- When the library is rebooted

The time and date of the last test will appear below the Key Path Diagnostics screen. If any of the tests fail, refer to “Maintenance Problems” on page 7-2 for additional information.

Service Library: Upgrade Firmware

This page displays the current library and drive firmware versions. Firmware can be downloaded to the host then uploaded to the drive in the library by using this page.

In the first line you can see the actual loaded firmware revision or level installed on the drive. Click **Browse...** to choose the firmware file you have downloaded from the web site on the first drive you want to update (You can not update 2 drives at the same time). Be sure you choose the correct firmware for your drive type. After pressing the **Update** button the file will be sent to the drive and the drive will be upgraded.

Note: During the update no host drive action is possible. The drive update takes approximately 5 minutes. The system status panel (in the right of the browser window) will change from “update” to “ready”.

Upgrade Library Firmware	
Currently Installed Library Firmware	3.05
Library Firmware File	<input type="text"/> Browse...
	Update

Upgrade Drive 1 Firmware	
Drive Firmware Revision	73P0
Drive Firmware File	<input type="text"/> Browse...
	Update

a77ug081

Figure 5-54. The 2U library Service Library: Upgrade Firmware page

Upgrade Library Firmware	
Currently Installed Library Firmware	3.05
Library Firmware File	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/>
<input type="button" value="Update"/>	

Upgrade Drive 1 Firmware	
Drive Firmware Revision	73PA
Drive Firmware File	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/>
<input type="button" value="Update"/>	

Upgrade Drive 2 Firmware	
Drive Firmware Revision	73PA
Drive Firmware File	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/>
<input type="button" value="Update"/>	

a77ug097

Figure 5-55. The 4U library Service Library: Upgrade Firmware page

Service Library: Reboot

Important: Some options of the Web User Interface take the library OFFLINE. This inactive mode can interfere with host-based application software, causing data loss. Ensure that the library is idle before attempting to perform any remote operations that will take the library OFFLINE.

This page is used to perform a library reboot. There is a default time delay when the Web User Interface page refreshes itself. This time should be sufficient to reload the page. However, during a reboot, the connection to the library may be lost. If the connection is lost, the user will have to reload the page manually.

Reboot
<input type="button" value="Reboot"/>

a77ug077

Figure 5-56. Service Library: Reboot page

Import and Export Media during Normal Library Operation

Import Media

Data cartridges can be inserted and taken out of a magazine while the library is in operation. If the library contains an I/O Station, and you wish to import media, follow these steps:

1. Go to **Main** → **Control** → **Open I/O Station**. The I/O Station will unlock itself.
2. Pull out the magazine and insert a data cartridge(s) into the I/O Station. On a 2U library, only 1 cartridge can be inserted at a time. On the 4U library, 3 cartridges can be inserted at one time.

3. Close the door of the I/O Station. The library will automatically start an inventory. The cartridges in the I/O Station will be counted but unassigned until they are moved into storage slots.
4. Go to **Main → Control → Move Cartridges** and move the data cartridges into the desired data slots. See “Control: Move Cartridges” on page 5-17 or “Manage Library: Move Media” on page 5-49 for more information.

If the library does not have an I/O Station (all slots are assigned to storage), and you wish to import media, you will need to release a magazine and insert the cartridges manually following these steps:

1. Go to **Main → Control → Magazine**. Choose the desired magazine to unlock/remove.
2. Pull out the magazine and insert a data cartridge(s) into the empty slots.
3. Push the magazine back into the library. The library will automatically start an inventory.
4. To move cartridges in the magazine once they are inserted, go to **Main → Control → Move Cartridges** and move the data cartridges into the desired slots. See “Control: Move Cartridges” on page 5-17 or “Manage Library: Move Media” on page 5-49 for more information.

Note: If you run a library configuration backup program on your host computer, use the program to run an audit of the library after new cartridges have been added to update the backup program.

Export Media

To remove cartridges from your library using your I/O Station, follow these steps:

1. Go to **Main → Control → Move Cartridges** and move the data cartridges into the I/O Station. See “Control: Move Cartridges” on page 5-17 or “Manage Library: Move Media” on page 5-49 for more information.
2. Go to **Main → Control → Open I/O Station**. The I/O Station will unlock itself
3. Pull out the magazine and take the data cartridge(s) out of the I/O Station
4. Push the magazine back into the library. The library will automatically start an inventory of the I/O station.

If you do not have an I/O Station (all slots are assigned to storage), and wish to export media, you will need to release a magazine and take out the cartridges manually following these steps:

1. Go to **Main → Control → Magazine**. Choose the magazine you wish to unlock/remove.
2. Pull out the magazine and remove the desired data cartridge(s).
3. Push the magazine back into the library. The library will automatically start an inventory.

Note: If you run a library configuration backup program on your host computer, use the program to run an audit of the library after cartridges have been removed to update the backup program.

Configuring I/O Stations and Reserving Slots

2U libraries usually have 1 slot for an I/O Station, while 4U libraries have 3 slots assigned as an I/O Station. These slots can be configured as storage if needed.

To configure the I/O Station using the Web User Interface, follow these steps.

- Go to **Configure Library->General**.
- To enable the I/O Station, place a check mark in the **I/O Station Enabled** box. If it is checked as enabled, the first 3 physical slots in the lower left magazine in a 4U or the first physical slot in the left magazine in a 2U is configured as an I/O station. If the I/O Station Enabled box is not checked, the slots are configured as storage.

Dedicated Cleaning Slot

Earlier versions of the 4U library contained a Dedicated Cleaning Slot (DCS). This DCS can be retained and is supported by future library firmware updates. Library firmware after 1.95 will allow removal of the DCS, thus enabling this slot to be used as a storage slot.

To remove the DCS, perform the following procedures using the Operator Control Panel (OCP).

1. Navigate to the Library Settings (Logical Library Settings) screen **Configure > Library Settings (or Logical Library Settings)**.
2. Select **General**.
3. Scroll down to **Remove DCS**.
4. Select **No** or **Yes**.
5. Select **Save** then press the **Enter** button.

Attention: If your library originally contained a Dedicated Cleaning Slot and was removed, it can only be reinstated by restoring factory default settings.

To enable automatic cleaning of the drives when needed, a slot must be reserved, a cleaning cartridge must be present in the reserved slot, and Auto Clean must be enabled.

Reserving Slots

Reserving a slot is accomplished by reducing the **Active Slot** count in any particular logical library. Slots are reserved beginning with the last available slot in the last magazine of the library. A cleaning cartridge in a reserved slot is available to any logical library drive even if the reserved slot is not in that logical library. Typically, if the library contains multiple logical libraries, the last logical library is chosen for the reserved slot containing the cleaning cartridge. As with a library with a single logical library, this slot is the last physical slot in the library (top right magazine, uppermost rear slot).

To reserve a cleaning slot, follow these steps.

- To reserve slots in your library, go to the Web User Interface at “Choosing General Library Settings” on page 4-18 or the Operator Control Panel at “Configure: Library” on page 5-20 to get directions on reducing the Active slot count.

Chapter 6. Using Ultrium Media

Figure 6-1 shows the LTO Ultrium 800 GB Data Cartridge and its components.

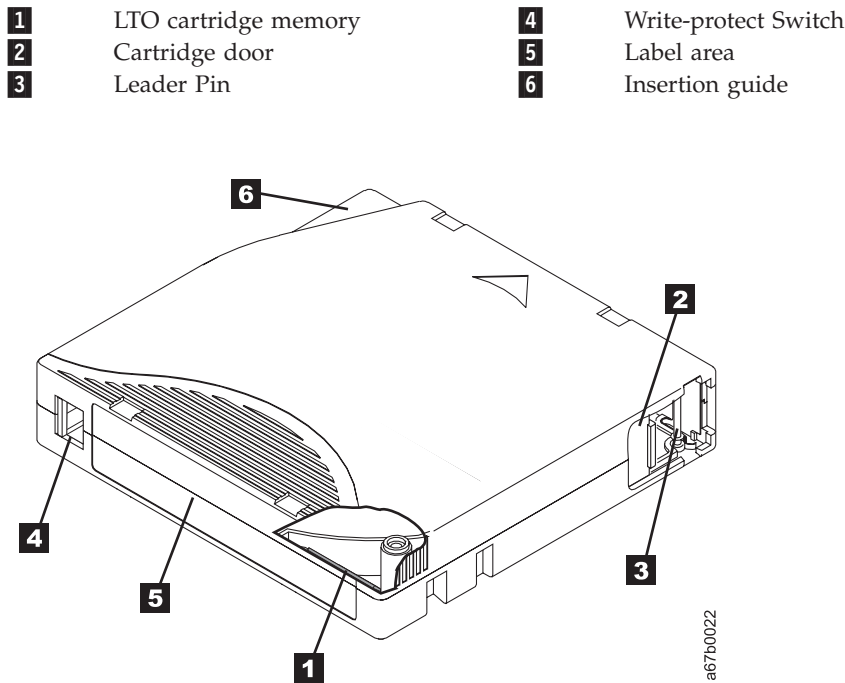


Figure 6-1. The LTO Ultrium 800 GB Data Cartridge

Data Cartridges

The different generations of Ultrium data cartridges can be identified by color:

Type	Color
Ultrium 4	Green
Ultrium 4 WORM	Green and Silvery gray
Ultrium 3	Slate Blue
Ultrium 3 WORM	Slate Blue and Silvery gray
Ultrium 2	Purple
Ultrium 1	Black

All generations contain 1/2-inch, dual-coat, metal-particle tape.

When processing tape in the cartridges, Ultrium Tape Drives use a linear, serpentine recording format. The native data capacity and recording format of Ultrium data cartridges is as follows:

Type	Native Data Capacity	Recording Format
Ultrium 4	800 GB (1600 GB at 2:1 compression)	Reads and writes data on 896 tracks, sixteen tracks at a time.

Type	Native Data Capacity	Recording Format
Ultrium 3	400 GB (800 GB at 2:1 compression)	Reads and writes data on 704 tracks, sixteen tracks at a time
Ultrium 2	200 GB (400 GB at 2:1 compression)	Reads and writes data on 512 tracks, eight tracks at a time
Ultrium 1	100 GB (200 GB at 2:1 compression)	Reads and writes data on 384 tracks, eight tracks at a time

The first set of tracks (sixteen for Ultrium 4 and 3; eight for Ultrium 2 and 1) is written from near the beginning of the tape to near the end of the tape. The head then repositions to the next set of tracks for the return pass. This process continues until all tracks are written and the cartridge is full, or until all data is written.

The cartridge door **2** protects the tape from contamination when the cartridge is out of the drive. The tape is attached to a leader pin **3**, behind the door. When the cartridge is inserted into the drive, a threading mechanism pulls the pin (and tape) out of the cartridge, across the drive head, and onto a non-removable take-up reel. The head can then read or write data from or to the tape.

The write-protect switch **4** prevents data from being written to the tape cartridge. For more information, see “Write-Protect Switch” on page 6-5.

The label area **5** provides a location to place a label. .

The insertion guide **6** is a large, notched area that prevents the cartridge from being inserted incorrectly.

Generation 3 and 4 of the LTO Ultrium Data Cartridge have a nominal cartridge life of 20,000 (20k) load and unload cycles. Generation 2 has a nominal cartridge life of 10,000 (10k) load and unload cycles. Generation 1 of the LTO Ultrium Data Cartridge has a nominal cartridge life of 5000 (5k) load and unload cycles.

Cartridge Compatibility

Table 6-1. Ultrium data and cleaning cartridge compatibility with Ultrium tape drive

Tape Drive	LTO Ultrium Data Cartridges			
	800 GB (Ultrium 4)	400 GB (Ultrium 3)	200GB (Ultrium 2)	100GB (Ultrium 1)
Ultrium 4	Read/Write	Read/Write	Read only	
Ultrium 3		Read/Write	Read/Write	Read only
Ultrium 2			Read/Write	Read/Write
Ultrium 1				Read/Write

WORM (Write Once, Read Many)

Certain records retention and data security applications require a Write Once, Read Many (WORM) method for storing data on tape. The LTO Ultrium generation 4 drive enables WORM support when a WORM tape cartridge is loaded into the drive.

WORM Media

Because standard read/write media are incompatible with the WORM feature, a specially formatted WORM tape cartridge (see Figure 6-2) is required. Each WORM cartridge has a unique, worldwide cartridge identifier (WWCID), which comprises the unique CM chip serial number and the unique tape media serial number. Ultrium 4 WORM cartridges are two-tone green and silvery-gray.

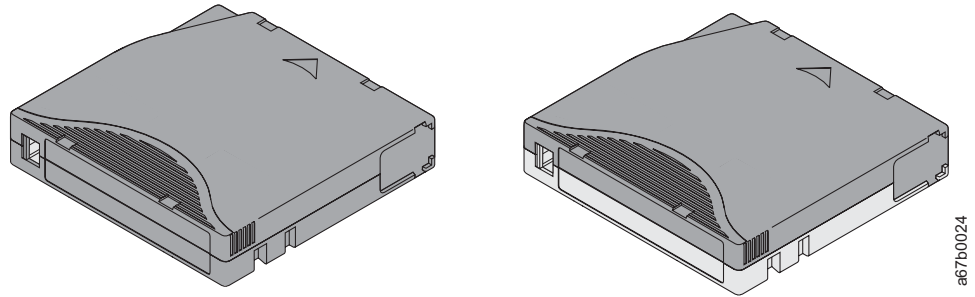


Figure 6-2. Ultrium WORM Tape Cartridge

Data Security on WORM Media

Certain built-in security measures help ensure that the data written on a WORM cartridge does not become compromised, for example:

- The format of an Ultrium 4 800 GB or Ultrium 3 400 GB WORM Tape Cartridge is unlike that of standard read/write media. This unique format prevents a drive that lacks WORM-capable firmware from writing on a WORM tape cartridge.
- When the drive senses a WORM cartridge, the firmware prohibits the changing or altering of user data already written on the tape. The firmware keeps track of the last appendable point on the tape.

WORM Media Errors

The following conditions cause WORM media errors to occur:

- Information in the servo manufacturer's word (SMW) on the tape must match information from the cartridge memory (CM) module in the cartridge. If it does not match, a media Error Code 7 will post on the drive's single-character display (SCD). An error will also be displayed on the Operator Control Panel.
- Inserting a WORM tape cartridge into a drive that is not WORM capable causes the cartridge to be treated as an unsupported medium. The drive will report a media Error Code 7. Upgrading the drive firmware to the correct code level will resolve the problem.

Cleaning Cartridge

With each library, a specially labeled LTO Ultrium Cleaning Cartridge is supplied to clean the drive head. The drive itself determines when a head needs to be cleaned. It alerts you by lighting the "Clean Drive" (amber LED) above the library Operator Control Panel. To clean the head manually, insert a cleaning cartridge into the tape load compartment (see "Inserting the Cleaning Cartridge" on page 4-34). The drive performs the cleaning automatically. When the cleaning is finished, the drive ejects the cartridge, and the library turns the "Clean Drive" LED off. Some libraries have an Auto Clean function which, when enabled, will prompt the library to retrieve the cleaning cartridge that resides in the library, insert it in the drive that needs cleaning, clean the drive, then return the cleaning cartridge to its home slot.

Note: The drive will automatically eject an expired cleaning cartridge.

The Cleaning Cartridges are valid for 50 uses. LT04 drives cannot be cleaned with an LT01 cleaning tape. A universal tape or at least LT02 media is needed.

Bar Code Label

A bar code label contains:

- A volume serial number (VOLSER) that is human-readable
- A bar code that the library can read

Note: The tape drive does not require bar code labels, but you may choose to use labels for tape cartridge identification purposes.

When read by a library's bar code reader, the bar code identifies the cartridge's VOLSER to the library. The bar code also tells the library whether the cartridge is a data cartridge or cleaning cartridge. In addition, the bar code includes the two-character media-type identifier Lx, where x equals 1, 2, 3, or 4. L identifies the cartridge as an LTO cartridge and the number represents the generation of cartridge for that cartridge type. Figure 6-3 on page 6-5 shows a sample bar code label for the LTO Ultrium Tape Cartridge.

Tape cartridges can be ordered with the labels included or with custom labels. The bar code for usage in LTO tape libraries must meet predefined specifications. They include (but are not limited to):

- Six or eight (the default) uppercase alphanumeric characters, where the last two characters must be L4, L3, L2, or L1
- Label and printing to be non-glossy
- Nominal narrow line or space width of 0.423 mm (0.017 in.)
- Wide to narrow ratio of 2.75:1
- Minimum bar length of 11.1 mm (0.44 in.)

Table 6-2. Cartridges and VOLSERs compatible with the Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4 Tape Drive

Cartridges	VOLSER
Ultrium 4 Data Cartridge	xxxxxxL4
Ultrium 4 WORM Cartridge	xxxxxxLU
Ultrium 3 Data Cartridge	xxxxxxL3
Ultrium 3 WORM Cartridge	xxxxxxLT
Ultrium 2 Data Cartridge	xxxxxxL2
Ultrium 1 Data Cartridge (READ ONLY)	xxxxxxL1
LTO Ultrium Cleaning Cartridge	CLNxxxLx
*An Ultrium 3 Tape Drive must have a minimum firmware level of 54xx for it to be compatible with the WORM cartridge.	

When attaching a bar code label to a tape cartridge, place the label only in the recessed label area (see **4** in Figure 6-1 on page 6-1). A label that extends outside of the recessed area can cause loading problems in the drive.

Attention: Do not place any type of mark on the white space at either end of the bar code. A mark in this area may prevent the library from reading the label.

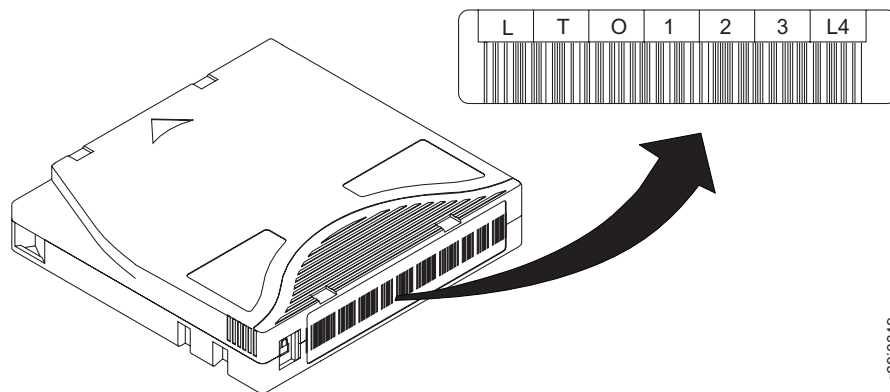


Figure 6-3. Sample bar code label on the LTO Ultrium 4 Tape Cartridge. The volume serial number (LTO123), cartridge type (L4), and bar code are printed on the label.


Guidelines for Using Bar Code Labels

Apply the following guidelines whenever using bar code labels:

- Do not reuse a label or reapply a used label over an existing label.
- Before you apply a new label, remove the old label by slowly pulling it at a right angle to the cartridge case.
- Use peel-clean labels that do not leave a residue after being removed. If there is glue residue on the cartridge, remove it by gently rubbing it with your finger. Do not use a sharp object, water, or a chemical to clean the label area.
- Examine the label before applying it to the cartridge. Do not use the label if it has voids or smears in the printed characters or bar code (a library's inventory operation will take much longer if the bar code label is not readable).
- Remove the label from the label sheet carefully. Do not stretch the label or cause the edges to curl.
- Position the label within the recessed label area (see **5** in Figure 6-1 on page 6-1).
- With light finger pressure, smooth the label so that no wrinkles or bubbles exist on its surface.
- Verify that the label is smooth and parallel, and has no roll-up or roll-over. The label must be flat to within 0.5 mm (0.02 in.) over the length of the label and have no folds, missing pieces, or smudges.
- Do not place other machine-readable labels on other surfaces of the cartridge. They may interfere with the ability of the drive to load the cartridge.

Write-Protect Switch

The position of the write-protect switch on the tape cartridge (see **1**) determines whether you can write to the tape. If the switch is set to:

- The locked position  (solid red), data cannot be written to the tape.
- The unlocked position (black void), data can be written to the tape.

If possible, use your server's application software to write-protect your cartridges (rather than manually setting the write-protect switch). This allows the server's software to identify a cartridge that no longer contains current data and is eligible

to become a scratch (blank) data cartridge. Do not write-protect scratch (blank) cartridges; the tape drive will not be able to write new data to them.

If you must manually set the write-protect switch, slide it left or right to the desired position.

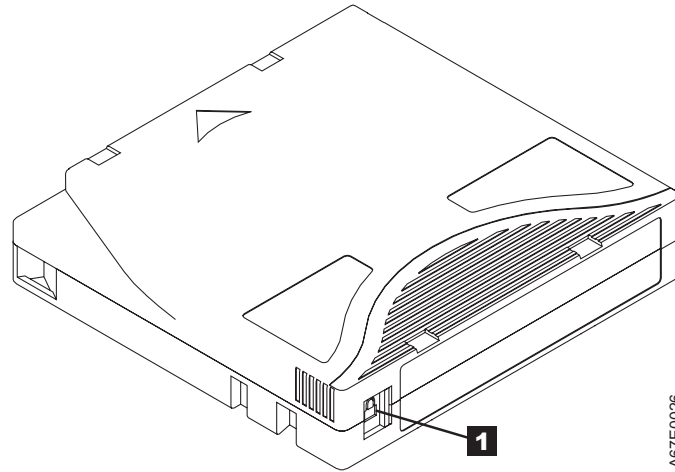


Figure 6-4. Setting the write-protect switch

Handling the Cartridges

Attention: Do not insert a damaged tape cartridge into the drive. A damaged cartridge can interfere with the reliability of a drive and may void the warranties of the drive and the cartridge. Before inserting a tape cartridge, inspect the cartridge case, cartridge door, and write-protect switch for breaks.

Incorrect handling or an incorrect environment can damage cartridges or their magnetic tape. To avoid damage to your tape cartridges and to ensure the continued high reliability of your LTO Ultrium Tape Drives, use the following guidelines:

Provide Training

- Post procedures that describe proper media handling in places where people gather.
- Ensure that anyone who handles tape has been properly trained in handling and shipping procedures. This includes operators, users, programmers, archival services, and shipping personnel.
- Ensure that any service or contract personnel who perform archiving are properly trained in media-handling procedures.
- Include media-handling procedures as part of any services contract.
- Define and make personnel aware of data recovery procedures.

Ensure Proper Packaging

- When shipping a cartridge, use the original or better packaging.
- Always ship or store a cartridge in a jewel case.
- Use only a recommended shipping container that securely holds the cartridge in its jewel case during transportation.

- Never ship a cartridge in a commercial shipping envelope. Always place it in a box or package.
- If you ship the cartridge in a cardboard box or a box of a sturdy material, ensure the following:
 - Place the cartridge in polyethylene plastic wrap or bags to protect it from dust, moisture, and other contaminants.
 - Pack the cartridge snugly; do not allow it to move around.
 - Double-box the cartridge (place it inside a box, then place that box inside the shipping box) and add padding between the two boxes (see Figure 6-5).



Figure 6-5. Double-boxing tape cartridges for shipping

Provide Proper Acclimation and Environmental Conditions

- Before you use a tape cartridge, acclimate it to the operating environment for 24 hours or the time necessary to prevent condensation in the drive (the time will vary, depending on the environmental extremes to which the cartridge was exposed).
- Ensure that all surfaces of a cartridge are dry before inserting it.
- Do not expose the cartridge to moisture or direct sunlight.
- Do not expose recorded or blank cartridges to stray magnetic fields of greater than 100 oersteds (for example, terminals, motors, video equipment, X-ray equipment, or fields that exist near high-current cables or power supplies). Such exposure can cause the loss of recorded data or make the blank cartridge unusable.
- Maintain the conditions that are described in “Environmental and Shipping Specifications for Tape Cartridges” on page 6-8.

Perform a Thorough Inspection

After purchasing a cartridge and before using it, perform the following steps:

- Inspect the cartridge’s packaging to determine potential rough handling.
- When inspecting a cartridge, open only the cartridge door. Do not open any other part of the cartridge case. The upper and lower parts of the case are held together with screws; separating them destroys the usefulness of the cartridge.
- Inspect the cartridge for damage before using or storing it.

- Inspect the rear of the cartridge (the part that loads first into the tape load compartment) and ensure that there are no gaps in the seam of the cartridge case. If there are gaps in the seam (see Figure 6-6), the leader pin may be dislodged.

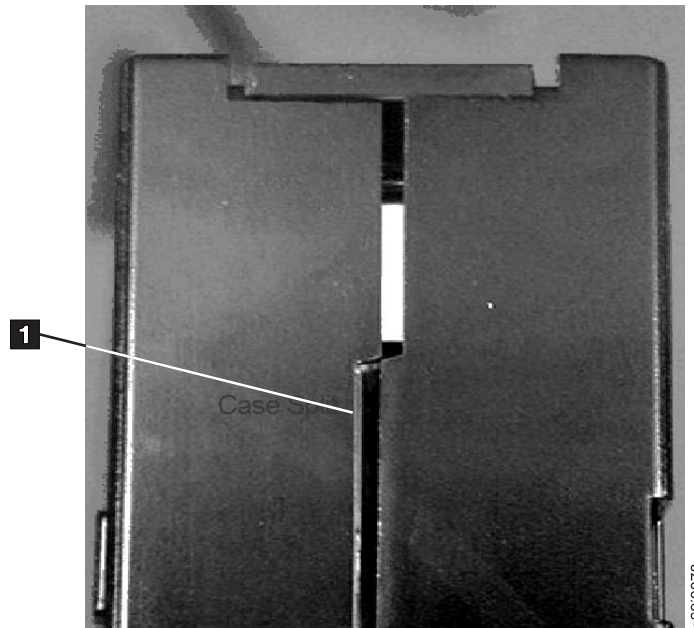


Figure 6-6. Checking for gaps in the seams of a cartridge

- Check that the leader pin is properly seated.
- If you suspect that the cartridge has been mishandled but it appears usable, copy any data onto a good cartridge immediately for possible data recovery. Discard the mishandled cartridge.
- Review handling and shipping procedures.

Handle the Cartridge Carefully

- Do not drop the cartridge. If the cartridge drops, slide the cartridge door back and ensure that the leader pin is properly seated in the pin-retaining spring clips.
- Do not handle tape that is outside the cartridge. Handling the tape can damage the tape's surface or edges, which may interfere with read or write reliability. Pulling on tape that is outside the cartridge can damage the tape and the brake mechanism in the cartridge.
- Do not stack more than six cartridges.
- Do not degauss a cartridge that you intend to reuse. Degaussing makes the tape unusable.

Environmental and Shipping Specifications for Tape Cartridges

Before you use a tape cartridge, acclimate it to the operating environment for 24 hours or the time necessary to prevent condensation in the drive (the time will vary, depending on the environmental extremes to which the cartridge was exposed).

The best storage container for the cartridges (until they are opened) is the original shipping container. The plastic wrapping prevents dirt from accumulating on the cartridges and partially protects them from humidity changes.

When you ship a cartridge, place it in its jewel case or in a sealed, moisture-proof bag to protect it from moisture, contaminants, and physical damage. Ship the cartridge in a shipping container that has enough packing material to cushion the cartridge and prevent it from moving within the container.

Table 6-3 gives the environment for operating, storing, and shipping LTO Ultrium Tape Cartridges.

Table 6-3. Environment for operating, storing, and shipping the LTO Ultrium Tape Cartridge

Environmental Factor	Environmental Specifications			
	Operating	Operational Storage ¹	Archival Storage ²	Shipping
Temperature	10 to 45°C(50 to 113°F)	16 to 32°C(61 to 90°F)	16 to 25°C(61 to 77°F)	-23 to 49°C(-9 to 120°F)
Relative humidity (non-condensing)	10 to 80%	20 to 80%	20 to 50%	5 to 80%
Maximum wet bulb temperature	26°C(79°F)	26°C(79°F)	26°C(79°F)	26°C(79°F)
Note: 1. The short term or operational storage environment is for storage durations of up to six months. 2. The long term or archival storage environment is for durations of six months up to ten years.				

Chapter 7. Troubleshooting

Installation Problems

Problems encountered during the installation of the library are usually caused by improper SCSI bus configuration, application software configuration errors, or an incorrectly configured operating system. If the application software that you are using is not communicating with the library after installation, check the following:

- **Accessor Ship Lock Key:**

Ensure that the Accessor Ship Lock Key on the top cover has been removed **before** powering on the library. Refer to “Removing and Storing the Shipping Lock” on page 4-4.

- **Drive SCSI or Loop ID:**

Ensure that the SCSI ID of the Drive (or Fibre Channel Loop ID) is correct and not the same as other devices that may be on the same bus or loop. To determine the SCSI or Loop ID for each SCSI or Fibre Channel drive in your library, navigate to:

- Operator Control Panel: **Monitor** → **Drive** → **Identity**
- Web User Interface: **Monitor Library** → **Drive** → **Identity**

To change a drive’s ID, navigate to:

- Operator Control Panel: **Configure** → **Drive** → **Drive Interface**
- Web User Interface: **Configure** → **Drive** → **Drives**

- **Host Bus Adapter (HBA) Compatibility:**

Ensure that the library is compatible with the HBA. For best performance, the HBA used for this library should be SCSI-3 LVDS. Pay particular attention to any steps describing settings of various jumpers and/or switches. .

- **HBA LUN 0/1 Support:**

A single ID will address both drive and library since the drive is LUN 0 and the library is LUN 1. These models require an HBA that supports LUN scanning which must be enabled at the HBA. Refer to “Logical Unit Number (LUN) Scanning” on page 3-6.

- **Cable Connections:**

Ensure that there are no bent pins on cables and that all connections are securely fastened.

- **Fibre Channel Tape Support:**

Ensure that Fibre Channel Tape Support is enabled on the HBA if you are installing a library with a Fibre Channel drive.

- **SCSI Cable Length:**

Ensure that the maximum cable length is not over 25 meters (82 ft.) for a single device on the bus or 12 meters (40 ft.) for multiple devices. Internal SCSI length within the library accounts for 2 ft.

- **SCSI Termination:**

Verify proper termination on both ends of the SCSI bus. Refer to “Connecting the Host Interface Cable” on page 4-12.

- **SAS Cables**

Ensure that SAS Cables are properly attached. Refer to “Connecting the Host Interface Cable” on page 4-12.

- **Backup Application Installation:**

Refer to the documentation included with your backup application software for instructions on how to verify proper installation.

- **Device Driver Installation:**

Ensure that the proper device driver, if applicable, is installed for the library.

Note: Many backup applications use their own drivers for the library and drive. Before installing a driver, make sure it will not be in conflict with the software. Contact your Backup Application vendor for this information.

Maintenance Problems

Many problems can be resolved by a firmware upgrade. Ensure that both the library and drive firmware are at the latest levels available.

To determine current library and drive firmware levels:

- Library firmware: **Monitor** → **Library** → **Identity** → **Version**
- Drive firmware: **Monitor** → **Drives** → **Identity (select a drive)** → **Firmware Rev**

Most library or drive errors will result in an error code or error message on the Operator Control Panel display. An error code history is maintained in the library or drive error log. See “View Drive Logs” on page 5-51 for how to get the error log over the Operator Control Panel and “View Logs” on page 5-51 to view logs using the Web User Interface.

- **CRUs (Customer Replaceable Units):**

The library consists of the following CRUs:

- Control Card (electronics, processor, memory, etc.)
- Power Supply
- Drive Sled (drive plus drive-to-library connectivity)
- Cartridge Magazines

- **Service Spare:**

- Library Enclosure (accessor, Operator control panel display, etc.)

- **Other Possible Replacement Parts:**

- Data Cartridges
- Cables/Terminator

Important: Before replacing any CRU and after finding the problem and performing any listed actions listed in the Troubleshooting Table below, be sure to review the “Procedures for Isolating CRU Problems” on page 7-8 to help confirm the failing CRU.

The following table is the starting point for all service issues. Find the reason which closest resembles the problem you are experiencing and perform the listed action.

Table 7-1. Troubleshooting table

Problem	Solution
Power	

Table 7-1. Troubleshooting table (continued)

Problem	Solution
Library does not power ON	1. Perform “Isolating a Power Supply Problem” on page 7-8.
The Operator Control Panel is blank or frozen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If possible, log on to the Web User Interface and check the error log. (Service Library → View Logs) 2. Record and note any error code and sub code found. If an error code is found, look up the error code and try to resolve (see Chapter 8, “Error Codes,” on page 8-1). 3. Power cycle the library. 4. Download the latest library firmware. 5. If the problem still exists, contact technical support.
Encryption	
Encryption Error: Displayed when the drive detects an error associated with a encryption operation - if the problem occurred while the tape drive was writing data to, or reading data from, tape	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the host application to ensure the host application is providing the correct encryption key. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the Dell Tape Device Drivers Encryption Support documentation and the Dell LTO Ultrium Tape Drive SCSI Reference documentation for the Sense Data returned for an encryption operation. • Retry the encryption operation after the host application problems have been resolved. 2. Check the operation of the tape drive by resetting the drive and running POST. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the error code displayed on the SCD if the drive resets and POST fails. • Retry the encryption operation if the drive reset and POST complete without errors. 3. Check the media. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure the correct media is being used. Data encryption is supported with LTO Ultrium 4 Data Cartridges only. • Retry the encryption operation with the tape cartridge in another encryption enabled drive. Replace the media if the problem repeats with the same tape cartridge in multiple drives. If the problem occurred while the tape drive was running POST or diagnostics, replace the drive. The error code clears with the first attempted write/read after the encryption key is changed, or when the drive is placed in maintenance mode. Encryption-related error is posted Check the host application’s error logs, device driver logs,
Encryption-related error is posted	Check the host application’s error logs, device driver logs, tape library error logs, and tape drive error logs for entries that are related to encryption. See “View Logs” on page 5-51, “View Drive Logs” on page 5-51, Chapter 8, “Error Codes,” on page 8-1, and “Drive Sense Data” on page C-6.

Table 7-1. Troubleshooting table (continued)

Problem	Solution
Connection problem with the Dell Encryption Key Manager (EKM)	<p>If you are using library-managed encryption, perform the Key Path Diagnostic (see “Service Library: Perform Key Path Diagnostics” on page 5-53) if this feature is available. If the test fails, a problem could exist with the IP address, the Ethernet cable, or the EKM server. Perform the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the Ethernet connection between the library and the EKM server. 2. Check the TCP/IP configuration of the library and the server. 3. Check that the EKM is correctly installed and configured, and that the EKM application is properly started (refer to your EKM documentation). 4. Ensure that the tape drive is registered in the EKM (refer to your EKM documentation). 5. Ensure that a default key label is defined in the EKM (refer to your EKM documentation). <p>If you are using application-managed encryption, check your tape backup application documentation for a similar test.</p>
Error Codes	
There is an error code in the error log.	Look up the error code and try to resolve (see Chapter 8, “Error Codes,” on page 8-1 and/or Appendix C, “Sense Data,” on page C-1).
Front Panel LEDs	

Attention LED	<p>Drive Sled Issues:</p> <p>Whenever there is a hardware configuration change such as drives being swapped with different form factors (i.e. HH to FH or FH to HH), a library configuration change is needed. Reconfiguring the library by reassigning the amount of logical libraries will clear this issue. Navigate to the Web User Interface Configure Library → Logical Libraries or to the Operator Control Panel's Configure → Library section and reassign the logical libraries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Install a drive sled (see “Isolating Drive Sled Problems” on page 7-10). • Modify or resubmit Logical Library setting (Operator Control Panel: Configure → Logical Libraries or Web User Interface: Configure Library → Logical Libraries). • Restore factory defaults (Operator Control Panel: Configure → Restore Defaults or Web User Interface: Configure Library → Restore Defaults). <p>Media Issues:</p> <p>Avoid contamination by ensuring that the library is installed in a clean, contamination-free environment. Continue cleaning the tape drive as needed. Refer to “Choosing a Location” on page 4-1.</p> <p>A cartridge should be acclimated for at least 24 hours before being used, particularly if it has been stored at a substantially different temperature or level of humidity than the library. Refer to “Provide Proper Acclimation and Environmental Conditions” on page 6-7.</p> <p>Any cartridge that is suspected of being defective or contaminated should NOT be reused, in any drive.</p> <p>Power Supply or Fan Issues:</p> <p>Check the power supply (or redundant power supply) for failure, and also check any power supply fans. Replace any defective units. Refer to “System Status” on page 2-6 for a redundant power supply failure on a 4U library and “Isolating a Power Supply Problem” on page 7-8.</p> <p>Another method of determining why the Attention LED is turned ON, log in to the Web User Interface and select Service Library → View Logs → Warning Log.</p>
Clean Drive LED	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that you are using an Ultrium universal cleaning cartridge (see “Cleaning Cartridge” on page 6-3). • Ensure that the cleaning cartridge has not expired. A drive will automatically eject an expired cleaning cartridge. A cleaning cartridge is good for 50 cleans. If your cleaning cartridge has expired, order a new cleaning cartridge. • If the problem still exists, contact technical support.
Error LED	<p>Make a note of the error and sub error code, then refer to Chapter 8, “Error Codes,” on page 8-1. To check the library error log, log on to the Web User Interface and click Service Library, then View Logs.</p>
Firmware	
Update library firmware	Refer to “Service Library: Upgrade Firmware” on page 5-54.
Update drive firmware	Refer to “Service: Service (Drives)” on page 5-27 or “Service Library: Upgrade Firmware” on page 5-54.
Cartridge Movement Problems	

Cartridge placement problems	<p>Magazine slot prism fiducials NOT seated properly can result in gripper or slider error codes due to the fiducial interfering with the back edge of the cartridge. Release and pull magazines out of the library for inspection. To release the magazines using the Operator Control Panel, navigate to Control → Magazine. To release the magazines using the Web User Interface, navigate to Manage Library → Release Magazines.</p> <p>Inspect the light pipe fiducials on each slot of the magazine for proper seating.</p>
Cartridge will not eject from drive	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Allow the drive to complete all operations. This may take as long as 10 minutes if you reset or cycle power on the library while the cartridge is positioned at the physical end of the media. 2. Ensure that the backup software is not reserving the slot or preventing the drive from ejecting the cartridge. The backup software needs to cancel the reservation and any hold it has on the drive. Temporarily disconnecting the library from the host server and power cycling eliminates the host and its software as a problem source. 3. If the problem still exists, contact technical support.
Cartridge can not be removed from storage slot	See "Removing Cartridges from Magazine Slots" on page 9-1.
Media	
Cleaning or data cartridge incompatible with drive.	Ensure that you are using data and cleaning cartridges that are compatible with the drive and model of your library. The library automatically unloads incompatible cartridges and the Media Attention LED flashes. Export the media in order to clear the state. Refer to "Cartridge Compatibility" on page 6-2.
Cannot write to or read from tape.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure that the cartridge write-protect switch is in the write enabled position (see "Write-Protect Switch" on page 6-5). 2. Ensure that you have the appropriate data cartridge for your library model (see "Cartridge Compatibility" on page 6-2). 3. Ensure that you are using an Ultrium cartridge that has <u>not</u> been degaussed. Do not degauss Ultrium cartridges. 4. Ensure that the cartridge has not been exposed to harsh environmental or electrical conditions and is not physically damaged in any way. Refer to "Provide Proper Acclimation and Environmental Conditions" on page 6-7 and "Perform a Thorough Inspection" on page 6-7. 5. Many backup applications do not read or write to cartridges that were created using a different backup application. In this case, you may have to perform an erase, reformat, or label replacement operation on the cartridge. 6. Ensure that you understand any data protection or overwrite protection schemes that your backup application may be using, which could prevent you from writing to a given cartridge. 7. Retry the operation with a different, known good cartridge. 8. Clean the drive. See "Service Library: Clean Drive" on page 5-50.
Drive ID (SCSI, SAS, or Fibre Channel Loop)	
Changed drive ID, but the host server does not recognize the new ID	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure that all devices on the same bus/network have unique ID numbers. 2. Ensure that you cycle power on the library after changing the ID. 3. Reboot the host server.

Tape library performance: The library is not efficiently backing up data	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the network bandwidth from the host computer. If you are backing up data over a network, consider comparing to a local-only backup. 2. Ensure that the library and tape drive are on their own SCSI bus and not daisy-chained to another tape drive or to the hard drive being backed up. 3. Ensure that the library is connected to a LVDS SCSI bus and there are no single-ended (SE) devices on the same bus, because this will cause the entire bus to negotiate down to SE speed. 4. Use an Ultra160 SCSI bus and high-quality cabling with the library.
Customer Replaceable Units (CRU) and Service Spares	
Drive Sled	See "Isolating Drive Sled Problems" on page 7-10.
Power Supply	See "System Status" on page 2-6 and "Isolating a Power Supply Problem" on page 7-8.
Library Controller Card	See "Isolating a Library Controller Card vs. Accessor Enclosure Problem" on page 7-11.
Library Enclosure (Service Spare)	See "Isolating a Library Controller Card vs. Accessor Enclosure Problem" on page 7-11.
ITDT	
Performance Test duration varies	<p>Items affecting the duration of the test are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The level of adapter device driver • Your adapter model and type
Other Problems	
Web User Interface problems	See "Isolating Web User Interface Problems" on page 7-11.
Bar code scanner problems	See "Isolating Accessor Scanner Problems" on page 7-12.
Host Attachment Interface problems	See "Isolating Host Attachment Interface Problems" on page 7-12
Need help with a library password	Contact technical support.
Key path diagnostic not working	This diagnostic is available with library firmware level greater than 6.xx. Refer to "Verifying/Updating Firmware" on page 4-17 to determine the level of firmware on your library. If necessary, visit http://support.dell.com to download the latest levels of firmware for your library.
Auto Clean status displayed as "Chk Media/Rsvd Slot?" on the Web User Interface System Status screen.	If Auto Clean is enabled and a cleaning cartridge is not present, or if a cleaning cartridge is present but not in the reserved slot, Auto Clean status will show "Chk Media/Rsvd Slot?" and Status will show a green check mark and the words "Media Attention."

Library Recovery Problem Determination

The 2U and 4U library firmware will generally retry failed operations up to three times before posting a failure to complete the operation, or, in some situations, proceeding with an operation that can be completed in an alternative manner. Of course, if the operation is successful within the allotted retry count, the appropriate retry counter is updated and recorded in the retry log and the next library operation will commence.

For example, failure to pick or place a cartridge from or to a designated cell or drive location after exhausting the retry count will result in a failed operation with the appropriate error code. However, failure to detect a particular cell location by sensing the prism fiducial located on the cell shelf because it is missing or damaged will eventually result in the cell location being located by the gripper, bar

code reader and positional emitter pulse count after the prism detection retry count is exhausted. If several prisms are missing or damaged or if the accessor prism sensor/emitter is inoperable, initialization and/or inventory functions can take a prolonged amount of time to complete due to the lengthy retry recovery procedure.

If the library is taking an extended amount of time to initialize, to perform an inventory or even move a cartridge within the library, the magazines prism integrity should be verified prior to exchanging a library component. This situation can be noted by the ACTIVITY line on the Operator Panel posting Recovery. Prism integrity verification can be done by releasing the magazines and inspecting the cell prisms. Normal initialization or inventory time for a 2U library once the picker mechanism starts its operation should be approximately 1 to 2 minutes. For a 4U library, 2 to 3 minutes. A single missing or damaged prism can add 1 to 2 minutes. If the accessor tray sensor/emitter is inoperable, or several prisms are missing or damaged, initialization or inventory could exceed 30 minutes or longer. Refer to Troubleshooting table "Cartridge Movement Problems".

Procedures for Isolating CRU Problems

Isolating a Power Supply Problem

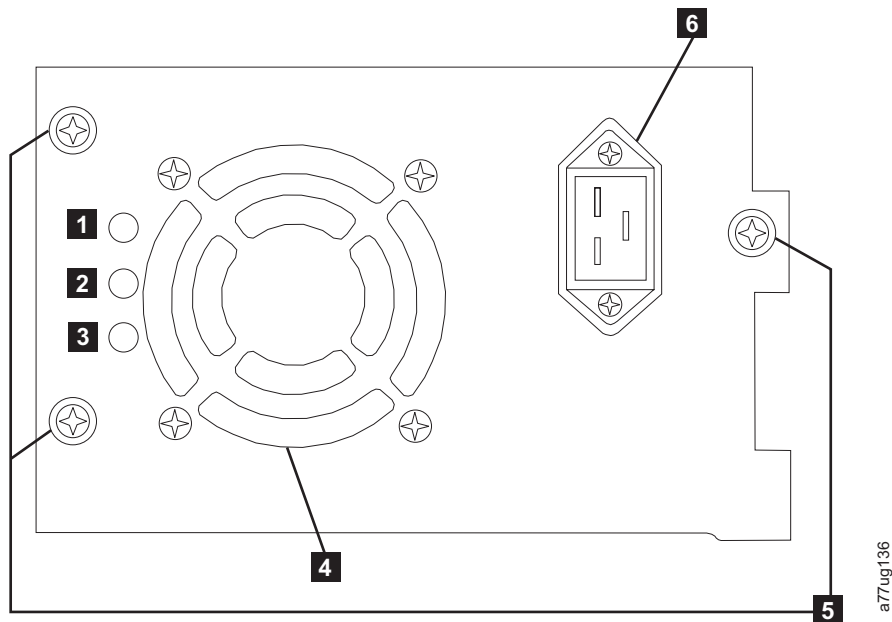


Figure 7-1. A 250w power supply with LEDs

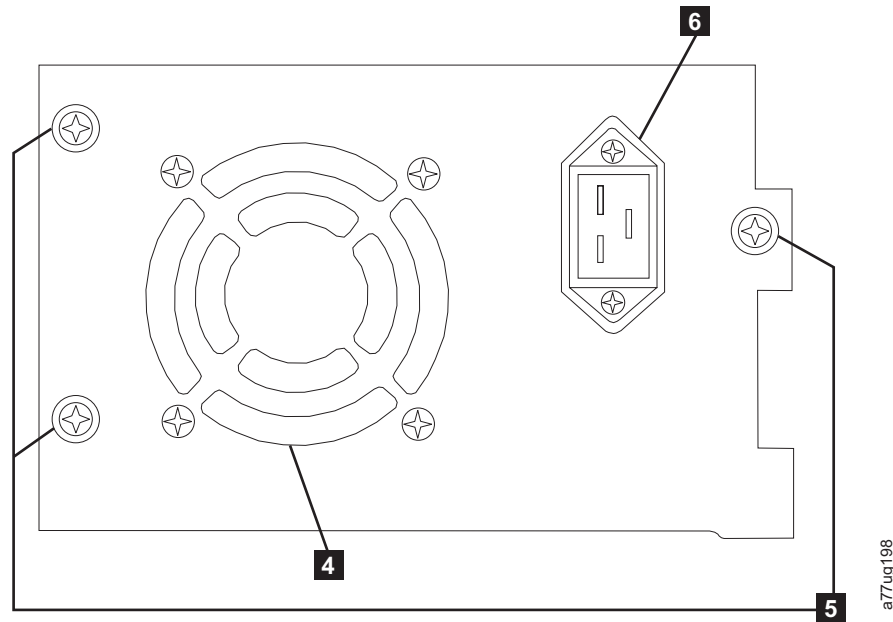


Figure 7-2. A 80w power supply without LEDs

Table 7-2. Power Supply LED Meanings

1	If the blue LED is lit, AC voltage is available.
2	If the amber LED is lit, there is a possible fan problem or other power supply issue. The power supply will need replacement.
3	If the green LED is lit, DC power is OK and active.
4	Cooling Fan Grill
5	Thumb Screws
6	Power Receptacle

Note: Not all power supplies have LEDs. The original power supply for the 2U library did not have LEDs though any power supplies replaced will likely have LEDs. The 4U library has power supplies with LEDs.

If the Library does not power on:

1. With library power OFF and the power cord unplugged, loosen the three thumb screws (**5**), grasp two of the thumb screws, pull the power supply out half way and then reseal the power supply and tighten the three thumb screws.
2. Ensure the power cord is plugged in at the power supply (**6**) and at the electrical outlet, then turn library power ON.
 - a. For power supplies with LED's, the "Blue" LED will be lit if AC power is good.
 - b. If your power supply does not have LED's, feel for air flowing out of the cooling fan grill on the rear of the library (**4**). AC is good if air is flowing from the cooling fan grill.
3. If AC appears to be missing
 - a. Plug the power cord into another electrical outlet.
 - b. Plug another device into the outlet to test.
 - c. If the outlet tests OK, try another power cord.

4. For power supplies with LED's, if the "Amber" LED is lit, replace the power supply (refer to "Replacing a Power Supply" on page 10-7).
5. If your power supply has no LED's, and you have verified that the electrical outlet works properly, but the power supply is still failing, replace it (refer to "Replacing a Power Supply" on page 10-7).
6. If the power supply seems to be delivering power to the library (Operator Control Panel and front panel LED's may be functioning); however, air does not flow from the power supply cooling fan grill on the rear of the library, replace the power supply (refer to "Replacing a Power Supply" on page 10-7).
7. If the power supply seems to be delivering power to the library (Operator Control Panel and front panel LED's may be functioning), and air is flowing from the power supply cooling fan grill on the rear of the library, observe the "Green" LED (lowest of the three). If it is lit, the power supply is OK.

Note: If your library has -04 level redundant power supplies (see label on top of power supply), it is normal for the one in "Standby" mode to turn its "Green" LED off. You can test this power supply by pulling the power connector from the other "Active" power supply. The power supply that was in "Standby" mode will now become "Active", and its "Green" LED should light. If it doesn't, replace it (refer to "Replacing a Power Supply" on page 10-7).

If your library has -05 level redundant power supplies, the "Green" LED will be ON on both power supplies. If both "Green" LEDs are not ON, replace the failed power supply (refer to "Replacing a Power Supply" on page 10-7).

8. If the "Green" LED is not lit, and it is the only one in the Library, replace it (refer to "Replacing a Power Supply" on page 10-7).

Isolating Drive Sled Problems

Prior to replacing a drive sled CRU, verify that the following activities have been performed:

1. Ensure that the drive firmware is at the latest level. To determine current library and drive firmware levels using the Operator Control Panel:
 - Library firmware: **Monitor** → **Library** → **Identity** → **Version**
 - Drive firmware: **Monitor** → **Drives** → **Identity (select a drive)** → **Firmware Rev**
2. Prior to powering OFF the library, if possible, collect a drive dump and save it on the host console for possible future use by Technical Support. Drive dumps can also be saved using the Web User Interface. See chapter 4, **Operations**, for instructions on using the "Save Drive Dump" on page 5-52 option under the Service Library menu selection.
3. Try reseating the drive sled.

Note: The drive sled is hot-pluggable so it is not necessary to power off the library. See "Replacing a Tape Drive Sled" on page 10-3.

4. Cycle power to the library.
5. If air does not flow from the drive sled cooling fan grill on the rear of the library, replace the drive sled CRU. Several library error codes also point to cooling problems. See "Replacing a Tape Drive Sled" on page 10-3.
6. If the drive is experiencing permanent or temporary errors or if the amber Clean LED is lit on the front panel of the library, select Clean Drive from the

Operator Control Panel Service Menu and clean the drive. Use only an approved cleaning cartridge (see “Cleaning Cartridge” on page 6-3).

7. Run the **Library Verify Diagnostic** which includes a drive performance Read/Write test (other drive diagnostics are also available) available on the Operator Control Panel or Web User Interface. Be sure to use a known good scratch or blank data cartridge.
 - If the drive test fails, replace the drive sled CRU (refer to “Replacing a Tape Drive Sled” on page 10-3).

Isolating a Library Controller Card vs. Accessor Enclosure Problem

1. If possible, ensure that the library firmware is at the latest level, check the current library firmware level using the Operator Control Panel (**Monitor** → **Library** → **Identity** → **Version**) or the Web User Interface (**Monitor Library** → **Library Identity**), then.
2. With library power OFF, loosen the two thumb screws which secure the controller card to the library enclosure and slide it out.
 - Inspect the card for any broken components or other anomalies.
 - If the card appears to have no abnormalities, reseal the card back in the library, tighten the thumb screws, and turn library power ON.
3. If both the Operator Control Panel and Web User interfaces are inoperable or frozen and the latest firmware has been installed, the controller card CRU electronics is the most likely failure. If only the Web User Interface has failed, please see “Isolating Web User Interface Problems” before replacing any CRUs.
4. If a control card error code has been obtained and reseating, power cycling, and updating the library firmware did not fix the problem, the controller card CRU is the most likely failing CRU (refer to “Replacing a Library Controller Card” on page 10-8).
5. If the error code indicates an accessor type error (slider, elevator, sled, etc.), release and remove both magazines (see “Control: Magazine” on page 5-17, “Manage Library: Release Magazine” on page 5-50, or “Releasing the Magazines Manually” on page 9-1) and observe the accessor path for any obvious obstruction or problems. Resolve any observed problem if possible. Otherwise, contact Dell technical support.
6. If the library is taking an extended amount of time in recovery to complete initialization, perform an inventory, or executing a cartridge movement within the library, and, after finding the magazine cell fiducials to be present with no visible damage and correctly installed, suspect the sensor/emitter on the accessor mechanism to be inoperable. .

Isolating Web User Interface Problems

If the Web User Interface is not functioning at all or if it is intermittently functioning, review the following steps to ensure that it is properly configured, or, to help determine which CRU or part needs to be replaced. The complete Web User Interface electronics reside on the control card CRU.

1. Ensure that the ethernet cable is securely plugged in the rear of the library at the ethernet port. See **7** on the “Rear Panel” on page 1-3.
2. Ensure that the correct IP, Netmask, and Gateway addresses are keyed into the network parameters. From the Operator Control Panel, navigate to **Configure** → **Network**.
3. Ensure that the correct IP address is being used on the web browser.

4. If the ethernet connection is a direct connection between the PC and the library, a special "crossover" ethernet cable needs to be used.

Note: On newer PCs, either straight through or crossover ethernet cables may be used since the crossover requirement is provided internally.

5. Check the ethernet cable carefully (or try another cable) and, if the cable is connected to a network hub or switch, try a different port.
6. If the Web User Interface is still malfunctioning, replace the Library Controller Card CRU (refer to "Replacing a Library Controller Card" on page 10-8).

Isolating Accessor Scanner Problems

If the server has reported inventory problems relating to inability to read bar code labels, or, if some or all of the cartridge labels are not being displayed on the Web User Interface, use the following procedure to determine if the scanner (library enclosure CRU) needs to be replaced.

1. Ensure that a supported bar code label (or labels) are being used. .
2. With library power OFF, reseal the control card CRU (refer to "Replacing a Library Controller Card" on page 10-8), and then switch library power ON.
3. Perform a re-inventory via the Operator Control Panel (**Control** → **Re-Inventory**) and view the inventory via the Web User Interface (**Monitor Library** → **Inventory**) to determine if the labels are now being read.
4. If the labels are still not being read properly, please contact Dell technical support.

Isolating Host Attachment Interface Problems

After successfully exercising "Isolating Drive Sled Problems", and more specifically the "Library Verify" diagnostic on the Operator Control Panel (**Service** → **Library Verify**) which includes a drive (or drives) read/write diagnostic, the following procedures are suggested to help isolate the failure to properly establish connectivity to the Host Bus Adapter (HBA).

1. Use the utility, ITDT, to evaluate connectivity from the HBA through the cabling to the drive (or drives). ITDT does not require separate device drivers, thus the Operating System has the ability to scan and find all the LTO devices that are attached. If ITDT cannot successfully locate the LTO drive, suspect cabling or HBA problems, and skip step 2. If ITDT successfully located the LTO drive, proceed to step 2. See "Using the ITDT Firmware Update, Dump Retrieval and Drive Test Tool" on page 9-5 for a brief description of ITDT and instructions on how to download the tool from the web.
2. If ITDT successfully locates the LTO device(s), verify that the correct application device drivers and backup application software is properly installed.
3. Ensure that all the required or latest available Operating System files and/or updates (dll's, PTF's, etc.) have been installed and applied.

Identifying a Suspect Cartridge

The amber **Attention** LED will be lit on the front panel of a library when there has been a failure that indicates a piece of media is bad, marginal, or invalid. It will be cleared when all invalid cartridges have been exported from the library. The amber LED may also be lit because a power supply, or a power supply fan is failing.

To identify a suspect cartridge

1. Navigate to **Move Cartridges** using the Operator Control Panel (**Control** → **Move Cartridges**).
2. Select **Source**.
3. Scroll through the different slots containing cartridges, and look for an exclamation point (!). The exclamation point indicates that the cartridge is bad or was rejected due to wrong format, write protected, etc..
4. Select the marked cartridge as the **Source** and the I/O Station as the **Destination (Dest.)**.
5. Select **Move**.
6. Open the I/O Station (**Control** → **I/O Station**).
7. Remove the marked cartridge from the I/O Station and dispose of properly.
8. Close the I/O Station. If the amber LED was lit because of bad media, the **Attention** LED will turn OFF. If the amber LED is still on, check the power supply or the power supply fans. See “Isolating a Power Supply Problem” on page 7-8.

Chapter 8. Error Codes

If an error occurs during operation of the library, the library stops the current operation and displays an error code on the LCD screen. Unless otherwise noted in Table 8-1 on page 8-2, try to resolve the error by cycling power to the library and retrying the last operation. If the error persists, contact technical support.

Example Error Code

EVENT -6

8D 07

Where:

- -6 indicates the position in sequence list, 0 being the most recent.
- 8D 07 indicates the error. (code 8D = sled blocked,).

The event log with the library also includes a date stamp for each event. Press SELECT to display the associated time stamp in the following format:

yy.mm.dd hh:mm:ss:HH

Where:

- yy is the year
- mm is the month
- dd is the current day
- hh is hours
- mm is minutes
- ss is seconds
- HH is 1/100 second

The time stamp is set to zero at system start.

A description of each error code and possible solution is provided in Table 8-1 on page 8-2.

Preparing to Resolve an Error Code

1. Record the error information that is displayed on the Operator Control Panel display or Web User Interface screen.
2. If possible, cycle library power and retry operation.
 - If the error reoccurs, refer to Table 8-1 on page 8-2 for information on resolving the error.
 - If the error does not reoccur, continue with normal library operation.

Complete the steps in “Preparing to Resolve an Error Code” before completing the User Action listed in Table 8-1 on page 8-2.

Table 8-1. Error Codes

Error Code	Description	User Action
30	SCSI: transport element full	Check the application software.
31	SCSI: all slots empty	
32	SCSI: invalid opcode	
33	SCSI: invalid element address	
34	SCSI: invalid field in CDB	
35	SCSI: Invalid drive specified	
36	SCSI: SEND DIAGNOSTIC command: invalid test number	
37	SCSI: invalid LUN	
38	SCSI: parameter list length error	
39	SCSI: parameter list error: invalid field	
3A	SCSI: parameter list error: parameter not supported	
3B	SCSI: parameter value invalid	
3C	SCSI: saving parameters not supported	
3D	SCSI: invalid ID message	
3E	SCSI: destination element full	
3F	SCSI: source slot or drive empty	
40	SCSI: wrong checksum	Check your configuration settings.
41	SCSI: command sequence error	
42	SCSI: drive disabled	Check the application software.
43	SCSI: mailslot disabled	
44	SCSI: flash image does not fit bootcode	
45	SCSI: media removal prevented by drive	Check the version of code used for the upgrade.
46	SCSI: media removal prevented by library	
47	SCSI: flash image does not fit personality	Check if a version of code is available which supports this drive type.
48	SCSI: drive type not supported in this library	
49	SCSI: incompatible magazine, magazine not accessible	Check your configuration settings.
4A	SCSI: source not ready	Complete move process and retry operation.
4B	SCSI: destination source not ready	
4C	SCSI: library controller busy	Complete process and retry operation.
4D	SCSI: cannot make reservation	Check application software.
4E	SCSI: invalid slave robotic controller request	
4F	SCSI: robotic axes/motors aren't initialized	Check robotics status.

Table 8-1. Error Codes (continued)

Error Code	Description	User Action
50	SCSI: cartridge belongs to another partition	Check application software.
54	SCSI: failure in LME interface	
55	SCSI: invalid license key entered	
58	Recovered Error: SCSI parity error	Command successful after retries.
59	Recovered Error: Error log overflow	
60	Cleaning tape installed	Complete the cleaning process and retry the operation.
61	Cleaning failure Cleaning process could not be performed	Check cleaning tape and exchange if necessary. Retry operation
62	Cleaning tape expired	Exchange cleaning tape
63	Invalid cartridge Drive has rejected the data tape as invalid	Check cartridge regarding tape and drive technology and retry operation. After further occurrence exchange data cartridge.
64	Invalid cleaning cartridge Drive has rejected the cleaning tape as invalid	Check cleaning cartridge and retry operation. After further occurrence exchange cleaning tape.
65	Invalid upgrade cartridge Drive has rejected the upgrade tape as invalid	Retry operation, after further occurrence contact technical support for new upgrade tape
70	Currently not used	
71	Currently not used	
72	Currently not used	
73	SCSI: overlapped command attempt	Check the application software.
74	SCSI: echo buffer overwritten	
80	Bar code reader Error, cannot initialize BCR	Contact technical support.
81	Bar code reader Error, no response from BCR	
82	EEPROM (Electrically Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory) Error, no response from EEPROM (located on accessor controller)	
83	Accessor controller generic problem	
84	Setting of gripper motor parameters failed	
85	Setting of slider motor parameters failed	
86	Setting of elevator motor parameters failed	
87	Setting of rotation motor parameters failed	
88	Setting of sled motor parameters failed	

Table 8-1. Error Codes (continued)

Error Code	Description	User Action
89	Gripper blocked	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If this is the first time the library has been powered ON or if it has been moved to a new location, ensure that the shipping lock has been removed. The lock is located on the top of the library (see "Removing and Storing the Shipping Lock" on page 4-4). 2. Remove the left and right cartridge magazines (refer to "Cartridge Magazines" on page 4-30). 3. Look inside the library and remove any obvious obstruction that may be preventing the accessor from functioning properly. 4. Cycle library power and retry operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the error reoccurs, contact technical support. • If the error does not reoccur, continue with normal library operation.
8A	Slider blocked	
8B	Elevator blocked	
8C	Rotation blocked	
8D	Sled blocked	

Table 8-1. Error Codes (continued)

Error Code	Description	User Action
8E	Cannot find gripper block within the expected range	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Run the Library Verify Test, then retry the operation. 2. If the error recurs, contact technical support.
8F	Cannot find slider block within the expected range	
90	Cannot find elevator block within the expected range	
91	Cannot find rotation block within the expected range	
92	Cannot find sled block within the expected range	
93	Gripper outside range, Gripper has reached a position beyond the expected range	
94	Slider outside range, Slider has reached a position beyond the expected range	
95	Elevator outside range, Elevator has reached a position beyond the expected range	
96	Rotation outside range, Rotation has reached a position beyond the expected range	
97	Sled outside range, Sled has reached a position beyond the expected range	
98	Cartridge present sensor not found	
99	Slider home sensor not found	
9A	Rotation home sensor not found	
9B	Sled position sensor not found	
9C	Gripper range out of specification	
9D	Slider range out of specification	
9E	Elevator range out of specification	
9F	Rotation range out of specification	
A0	Sled range out of specification	
A1	Open I/O Station (Import/Export Element) failed	Contact technical support.
B0	Robotic controller response timeout. A command did not complete in the required amount of time.	
B1	NACK (not acknowledged) received from robotic controller	
B2	Accessor controller communication failed	

Table 8-1. Error Codes (continued)

Error Code	Description	User Action
B3	Accessor controller urgent stop due to a released magazine	1. Verify that the left and right magazines are completely inserted, then retry operation. 2. If the problem still exists, contact technical support.
B4	Cartridge did not transport completely Gripper could not pick cartridge and CP sensor not present After pushing the cartridge, CP sensor still not present	Contact technical support.
B5	Accessor controller does not respond on command	
C0	Network initialization failed	1. Check network cable and network configuration, then retry operation. 2. If the error recurs, contact technical support.
C1	Telnet Interface initialization failed	
C2	Webserver initialization failed	
C6	Ping command did not reach target	
C7	Cannot Upgrade from USB	Contact technical support.
D0	ROM error. ROM checksum incorrect	
D1	RAM error. Power on Self Test (POST) has failed,	
D2	NVRAM (Non-Volatile Random Access Memory) error. R/W operation to NVRAM has failed	
D3	CTC (Channel to Channel) Error. Timer unit has failed during POST.	
D4	UART (Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter) Error. Frame overrun or Parity Error on serial Interface.	
D5	Display Error Communication to display failed	
D6	Memory Error, Stack and heap overflow.	
D7	Fatal system error	
D8	Data base error	
D9	No SCSI IC detected	
DA	While running the Library Verify Test, the bar code reader read different bar code data for the same customer-supplied scratch cartridge label.	1. Check the barcode label on the customer-supplied scratch cartridge, then run the Library Verify Test again. 2. If the error recurs, contact technical support.
DB	External cooling fan error (fan motion has stopped). The subcode indicates which drive sled fan is affected Subcode 01: drive sled #1(bottom) Subcode 02: drive sled #2	1. Verify that the indicated fan is operational and not obstructed. 2. If fan is not working, replace the drive sled that is failing.If the error recurs, contact technical support.

Table 8-1. Error Codes (continued)

Error Code	Description	User Action
DC	I ² C Bus Failure	Contact technical support.
DD	Power Supply x fan has failed, Redundancy may be at risk The subcode indicates which power supply fan is affected Subcode 01: 1st PS fan from bottom Subcode 02: 2nd PS fan from bottom	Check if the indicated fan is operational and not obstructed. Check ambient temperature conditions. Power cycle the unit If the error persists, contact technical support and replace power supply x.
DF	Power Good signal changed from 2 to 1 Power Supplies	Check the Power Supply whose green LED is not lighting If the error persists, contact technical support and replace power supply x.
F0	Drive Over temperature Condition The subcode indicates which drive is affected. <u>Example:</u> Subcode 02: drive #2	1. Check the ambient temperature conditions, and check all fans. 2. If the error recurs, contact technical support.
F1	Drive Communication Error Library controller has lost communication to drive The subcode indicates which drive is affected. <u>Example:</u> Subcode 02: drive #2	Contact technical support.
F2	Drive Sled not present The subcode indicates which drive sled is affected. <u>Example:</u> Subcode 02: drive sled #2	1. Verify that the drive sled is properly installed in the library and that all associated cables are properly connected, then retry the operation. 2. If the error recurs, contact technical support.

Table 8-1. Error Codes (continued)

Error Code	Description	User Action
F3	<p>Drive Hardware Error</p> <p>The subcode indicates which drive is affected.</p> <p><u>Example:</u></p> <p>Subcode 02: drive #2</p>	Contact technical support.
F4	<p>Drive Load Timeout</p> <p>Drive has run in a timeout while loading a tape.</p> <p>The subcode indicates which drive is affected.</p> <p><u>Example:</u></p> <p>Subcode 02: drive #2</p>	
F5	<p>Drive Unload Timeout</p> <p>Drive has run in a timeout while unloading a tape</p> <p>The subcode indicates which drive is affected.</p> <p><u>Example:</u></p> <p>subcode 02: drive #2</p>	

Table 8-2. Sub error codes

Error Code	Description
Robotics	
00	No sub error code
01	Mechanical initialization failure
02	Connection to slave robotic failed
03	Error motor initialization
04	Error during gripper close
05	Error slider home positioning
06	Error elevator home movement
07	Error during sled movement to rotation position
08	Error during rotation initialization, get range failed
09	Error elevator init
0A	Error during rotation to far position

Table 8-2. Sub error codes (continued)

0B	Error first sled init, move to sensor failed
0C	Error during sled movement to rotation position
0D	Error during rotation to drive position
0E	Error slider init, get range failed
0F	Error during slider forward movement
10	Error gripper init, get range failed
11	Error during slider home movement
12	Error during rotation to FAR position
13	Error sled init, move to sensor failed
20	Error Inventory scan
21	Error during gripper close
22	Error slider home movement
23	Error during move gripper to scan pos
24	Error reading barcode label
28	Error Extra inventory scan
29	Error during closing gripper
2A	Error slider preposition movement
2B	Error during opening gripper
2C	Error during sled movement up to sensor
2D	Error slider preposition backwards movement
30	Error slot preposition
31	Error during sled movement in FLMoveRotation function
32	Command sending to robotic failed
33	Error during elevator movement in FLMoveRotation function
34	Error during rotation in FLMoveRotation function
35	Error during elevator movement in FLMoveSled function

Table 8-2. Sub error codes (continued)

36	Error during sled movement in FLMoveSled function
37	Error during sled positioning to sensor in FLMoveSled function
38	Error during sled positioning to mail slot in FLMoveSled function
39	Error during sled positioning without sensor
40	Movement to/from slot failed
41	Error during first slider movement
42	Error during first gripper movement
43	Error during second slider movement
44	Error during second gripper movement, get range failed
45	Error during third slider movement, move home failed
50	Preposition to drive failed
51	Elevator movement to home sensor failed.
52	Sled movement to home sensor failed.
53	Error during sled movement to drive position.
54	Error during rotation to drive position.
55	Error during elevator movement in drive position.
56	Error during sled movement to rotation position.
57	Error during rotation to end position.
60	Move from/to drive failed.
61	Error during first slider movement.
62	Error during first gripper movement.
63	Error during second slider movement.
64	Error during second gripper movement, get range failed.
65	Error during third slider movement, move home failed.
70	Release magazine failed.
71	Error during sled movement to rotation position.
72	Error during rotation to unlock position.
73	Error during move sled to block.
80	Opening I/O slot failed.
81	Error during movement to I/O slot open position.
82	Error during moving back - sensor was found.
90	Movement to home position failed.
91	Elevator movement to home position failed.
92	Error during sled movement to rotation position.
93	Error during rotation to home or far position.

Table 8-2. Sub error codes (continued)

94	Sled movement to home sensor position failed.
95	Sled movement to transport position failed.
A0	Movement of I/O slot failed.
A1	Sled movement to sensor failed.
A2	Sled movement to rotation position failed.
A3	Elevator movement to home position failed.
A4	Error during rotation to far position.
A5	Sled movement to I/O slot position failed.
B0	EEPROM on robotics controller not accessible or error during r/w operation
Library	
81	Drive wake up failed
88	Error accessing slot status
90	Accessor load not reached Cartridge Present sensor
91	No activity after Load command
92	Timeout while loading tape
93	No activity after load command
94	Timeout drive Unload
95	Drive terminated unsuccessfully
96	Tape not ejected at robot unload
97	Slot not free at robot unload

Chapter 9. Service Procedures

Removing Cartridges from Magazine Slots

In the event of a severe mechanical problem with the library or if circumstances require you to remove tape cartridges, do the following. If the Operator Control Panel or the Web User Interface is still operational:

1. Move the tapes from the drive(s) to the magazines using the **Manage Library** → **Move Media** command (Web User Interface) or **Control** → **Move Cartridges** command (Operator Control Panel). See “Manage Library: Move Media” on page 5-49 or “Control: Move Cartridges” on page 5-17.

Note: Contact technical support if a cartridge will not eject from the drive.

2. Use the magazine removal process to release the magazine and remove it from the library. To use the Operator Control Panel, see “Control: Magazine” on page 5-17. To use the Web User Interface, see “Manage Library: Release Magazine” on page 5-50. If neither one of these processes works, see “Releasing the Magazines Manually.”

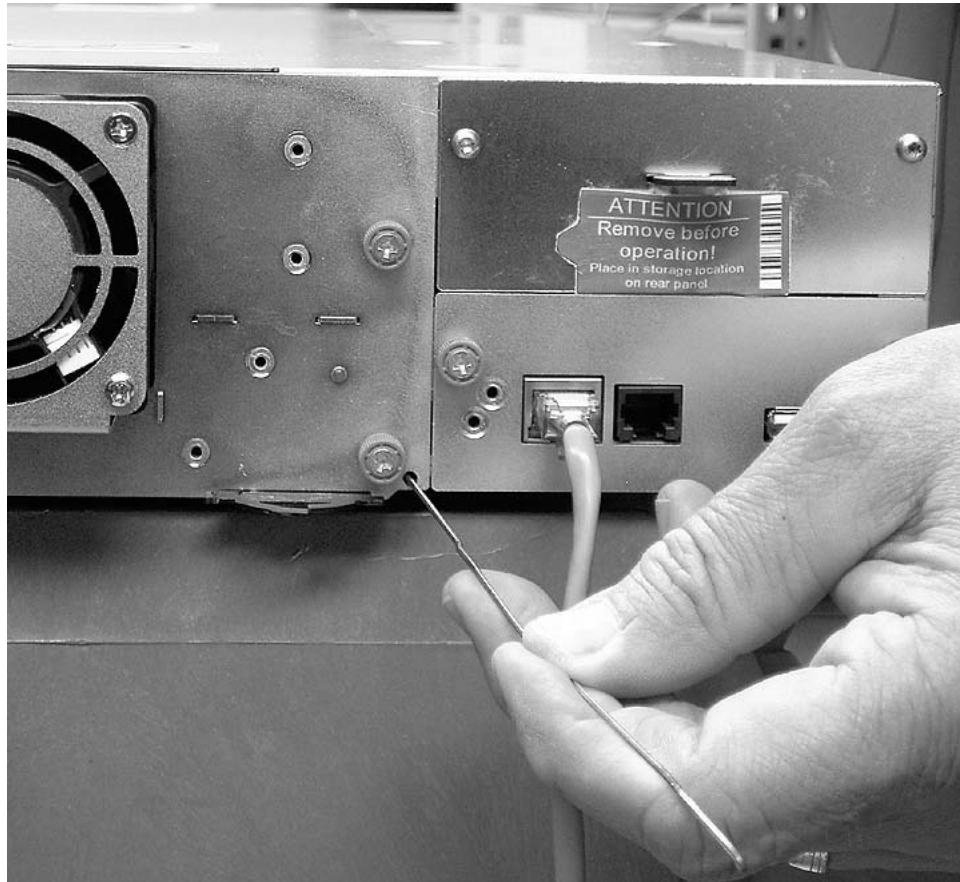
Releasing the Magazines Manually

If the directions in steps 1 and 2 above do not allow you to remove the tapes, do the following:

1. Unplug the power cord from the library.
2. Find the access holes for the right and left magazines.



Figure 9-1. Access holes for the left magazine



a77ug024

Figure 9-2. Access holes for the right magazine

3. To manually release the magazines, push the end of a straightened paper clip into the access hole for each magazine at the back of the library. While holding the paper clip, have a second person pull the magazine out of the front of the unit. DO NOT push the paper clip in more than 1/2 inch.



a77ug191

Figure 9-3. Left Magazines pulled out of the 2U library



a77ug186

Figure 9-4. Left Magazines pulled out of the 4U Library

4. If there are additional tapes still in the library, or if you were unable to manually remove the magazines and drive, contact technical support for further instructions.

Using the ITDT Firmware Update, Dump Retrieval and Drive Test Tool

A newly designed tool, ITDT, has multiple functional capability and is a very quick, convenient and efficient method for drive firmware updates. As a note, drive dump retrievals can be performed by the tool as well.

Note: Before using ITDT, verify that your library host operating system is at the latest released level. This will ensure optimum read/write operations for diagnostics.

Below are some of the capabilities of this tool:

- Firmware update capability via host interface to all LTO Tape Drive products.
- Does not require any special device drivers.
- Available for most major platforms (Windows, Linux[™], NetWare).
- Capable of uploading drive dump files.
- Primary function is thoroughly testing a drive. However, if the library is online to the server/host where the tool resides, ITDT will communicate with the drive through the library to load and unload a test cartridge thereby exercising some library functions.
- Scans the host interface and will find and display for selection all LTO devices.
- Each function has a "Help" selection which explains the required syntax as well as a brief explanation of the particular function.
- A Readme text file will be posted with the .exe for a thorough explanation of initial tool download information from the web as well as explanation of tool capabilities.

To download the ITDT tool and instructions for using the tool, visit <http://support.dell.com>.

Chapter 10. Check, Adjust, Remove, and Replace

Tools Required

To service a library you may need one or more of the following tools:

- #2 Phillips screwdriver
- Ground strap (recommended, if available)

Electrostatic Discharge

Important: A discharge of static electricity can damage static-sensitive devices or microcircuitry. Proper packaging and grounding techniques are necessary precautions to prevent damage.

To prevent electrostatic damage, observe the following precautions:

- Transport products in static-safe containers such as conductive tubes, bags, or boxes.
- Keep electrostatic-sensitive parts in their containers until they arrive at static-free stations.
- Cover the unit with approved static-dissipating material. If available, provide a ground strap connected to the work surface and properly grounded tools and equipment. If a ground strap is not available, touch a metal surface to discharge any static electricity in your body.
- Keep the work area free of no conducting materials, such as ordinary plastic assembly aids and foam packing.
- Make sure you are always properly grounded when touching a static-sensitive component or assembly.
- Avoid touching pins, leads, or circuitry.
- Use conductive field service tools.

Relocating Your Library

When moving or shipping your library, it is important that the shipping lock be in place to prevent the accessor from moving and to protect the library from possible damage. Before relocating your library, complete the following procedure.

1. Remove all cartridges from inside the library.
2. Power OFF the library. This will align the robot with the shipping lock slot.
3. Remove any cables and terminators connected to the library.
4. Remove the library from the rack, if necessary.
5. Remove the shipping label (**2**) and lock (**1**) from the rear panel of the library.



Figure 10-1. Shipping lock and label storage location

6. Insert the shipping lock (**1**) into the slot located on the center of the top of the library and secure with the shipping label (**2**).



Figure 10-2. Shipping lock and label

7. Pack the library in its original packaging materials (or equivalent packaging) for moving or shipping.

Replacing a Tape Drive Sled

There are two types of drive sleds in a TL2000 library (2U library) and a TL4000 library (4U library). The contents of the ship groups are specific to the type of drive sled.

- Drive sled without ElectroStatic Discharge (ESD) springs (see Figure 10-3) ship group:
 - Drive sled without ESD springs
 - Packet of conductive tape to be applied to the drive sled for ESD protection
- Drive sled with ESD springs (see Figure 10-4 on page 10-4) ship group:
 - Drive sled with ESD springs

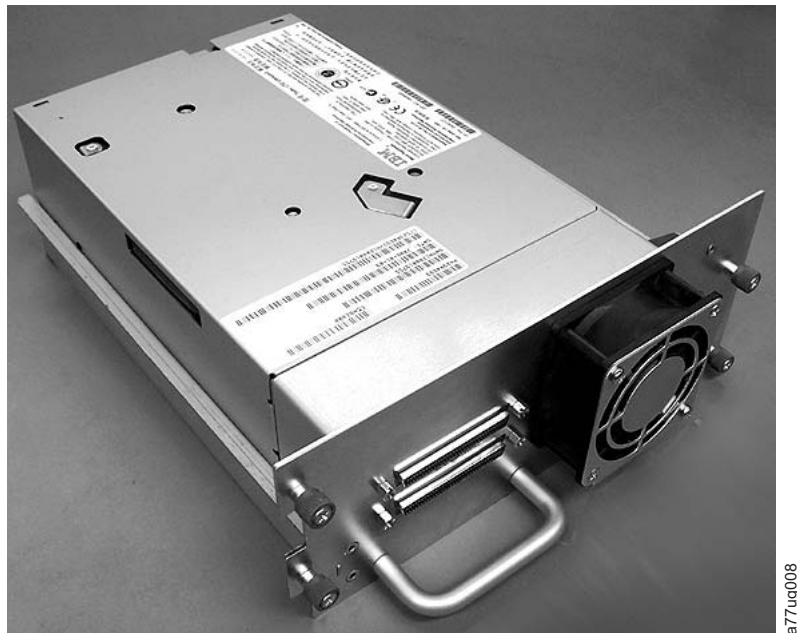


Figure 10-3. Library drive sled without ElectroStatic Discharge (ESD) springs (SCSI sled shown)

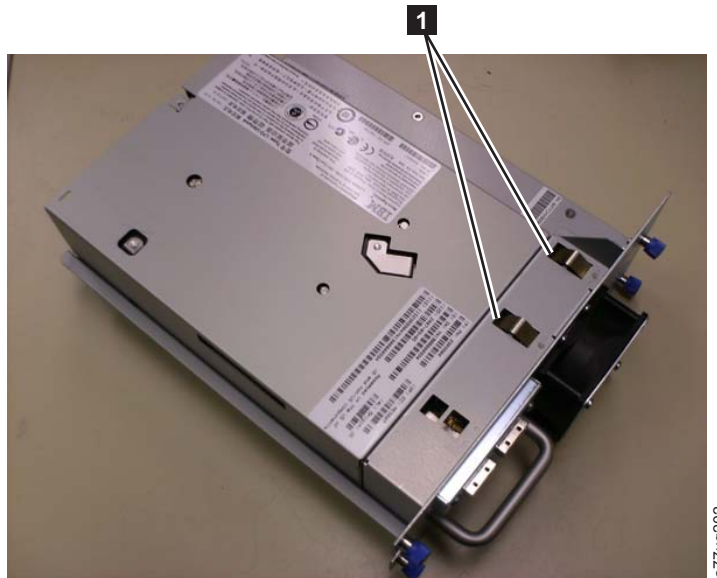


Figure 10-4. Library drive sled with ESD springs [1] (SAS sled shown)

Tape drive sleds are installed at the back of the library.

1. Power OFF the library before removing and/or installing a SCSI drive sled. Fibre Channel and SAS drive sleds are hot pluggable and may be removed and installed while the library is powered ON.
2. If necessary, unload the tape cartridge from the drive to be removed.
 - Using the Operator Control Panel: **Control** → **Move Cartridges**
 - Using the Web User Interface: **Manage Library** → **Move Media**
3. Remove the host interface cable (**1**, **2**, or **4** in Figure 10-5) and terminator (**3** for SCSI drive sled only).

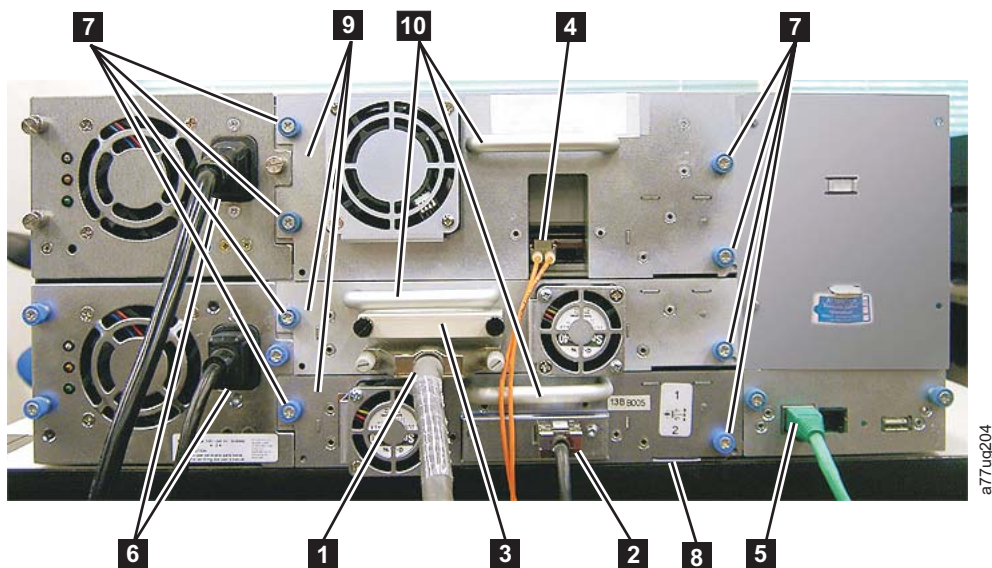


Figure 10-5. Drive sled components (full-high fibre drive in top position, half-high SCSI drive in middle position, half-high SAS drive in bottom position) on back panel of a 4U library

1	SCSI cable
----------	------------

2	SAS cable
3	SCSI terminator
4	Fibre Channel cable
5	Ethernet cable
6	Power cords
7	Drive sled blue captive thumbscrews
8	Black pull-out tab
9	Drive sled
10	Drive sled handle

4. If present, remove the conductive tape from the drive sled (refer to Figure 10-8 on page 10-7).
5. Loosen the blue captive thumbscrews (**7** in Figure 10-5 on page 10-4) on the drive sled.
6. Pull straight back on the drive handle sled (**10**) to remove it from the library (see Figure 10-6).

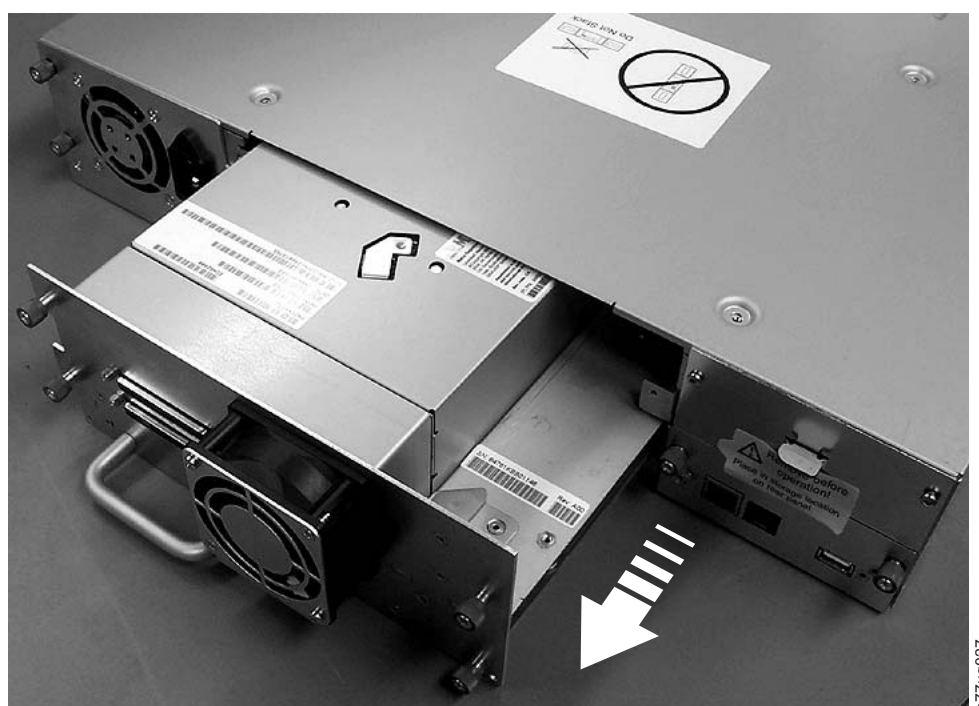


Figure 10-6. Pulling the drive sled out of the library (drive sled without ESD springs shown)

7. Before installing the new drive sled, inspect all connectors on the drive sled. Ensure that the connectors are intact, free of any foreign objects, and have no cracks, deformed or bent contacts.
8. Extend the black pull-out tab (**8** in Figure 10-5 on page 10-4) located underneath the library near the lower right corner of the drive sled.
9. Slowly insert the new drive sled into the drive slot, and align the connectors on the library while supporting the bottom of the drive sled (see Figure 10-7 on page 10-6). Ensure that the black tab remains extended (**8** in Figure 10-5 on page 10-4).

Important: Push in on the drive sled handle (**10** in Figure 10-5 on page 10-4) while supporting the bottom of the drive sled until it is properly seated. Damage to the connector pins may occur if this procedure is not followed.

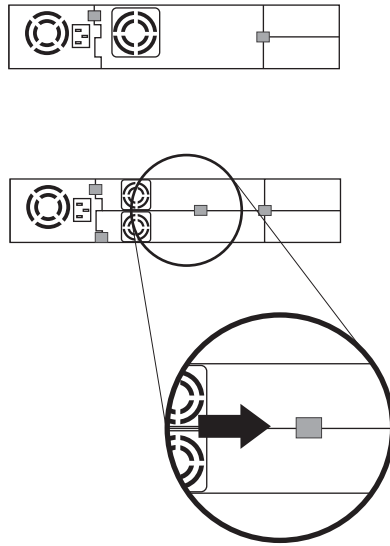
10. Push the drive sled slowly into the drive slot until the sled seats itself against the back of the library.



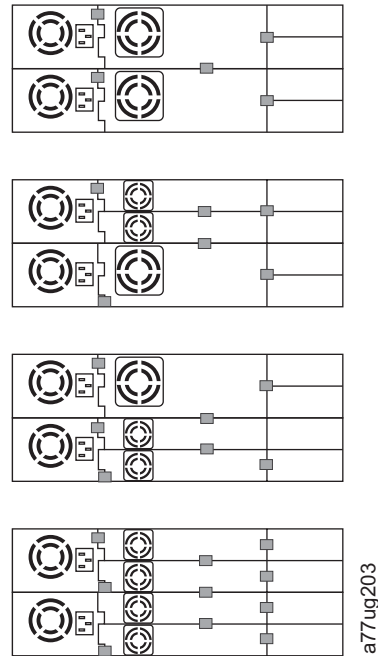
Figure 10-7. Pushing the drive sled into the library (drive sled without ESD springs shown)

11. Tighten the captive thumbscrews (**7** in Figure 10-5 on page 10-4) until the drive sled is secure.
12. If you are installing a drive sled without ESD springs (see Figure 10-3 on page 10-3), apply conductive tape to the sled as shown in Figure 10-8 on page 10-7.

2U Library



4U Library



a77ug203

Figure 10-8. Diagrams for applying conductive tape for ESD protection to the back of a drive sled installed in a 2U or 4U library

Note: The small gray markers show where conductive tape should be placed to provide ESD protection.

13. Push the black tab (**8** in Figure 10-5 on page 10-4) back underneath the library. When inserted properly, only the handle of the tab will be visible.
14. Upgrade library firmware and drive firmware to the latest version.

Note: Go to <http://support.dell.com> to download the latest firmware for your library and tape drive(s).

15. Run the Library Verify test. (Operator Control Panel: **Service** → **Library Verify**). This test requires the use of a scratch (blank) cartridge.
 - If the test passes:
 - When prompted by the Operator Control Panel display and the I/O Station opens, remove the cartridge used in the test.
 - Close the I/O Station by pushing it back into the library.
 - Press **Cancel** to exit the Library Verify screen.
 - Resume normal library operations.
 - If the test fails, an error code will be displayed. Make note of the error, then refer to the Troubleshooting chapter in this document for additional instructions.
16. Return the failed drive sled to Dell.

Replacing a Power Supply

1. Power OFF the library by pressing and holding down the power button for 4 seconds.
2. Disconnect the power cord from the electrical source, then from the library.

3. Loosen the three blue captive thumbscrews on the power supply located on the back panel of the library.
4. Pull on two of the thumbscrews to pull the unit away from the rear panel of the library, then grasp the top and bottom edge of the power supply and pull it out of the library.



Figure 10-9. A power supply being removed from a 2U library

5. Remove the packaging from the replacement power supply.
6. Grasp the top and bottom edge of the power supply and push it into the library.
7. Tighten the three blue captive thumbscrews on the power supply located on the back panel of the library.
8. Connect the power cord to the library, then to the electrical source.
9. Power ON the library using the power button on the front panel.
10. Run the Library Verify test (refer to “Service: Library Verify” on page 5-26).

Replacing a Library Controller Card

Read Me before Continuing

The Library Controller Card contains a copy of the vital product data (VPD) for your library. The VPD contains your current library configuration. A backup copy of this VPD is contained within the electronics of the Library Enclosure. When the Library Controller Card is replaced, the new replacement card should contain zeros (0's) in key VPD locations. Upon detection of these zeros, the library will automatically attempt to write VPD data to the new Library Controller Card from the backup copy of the VPD contained in the Library Enclosure. In rare occurrences, the new Library Controller Card may contain valid (non-zero) VPD data left over from having been installed previously in another library. If this occurs, the library, which is expecting to see zeros in the VPD area, will instead detect valid VPD data, and will not know which copy of the VPD is the correct one. It will detect a “VPD Mismatch” and display on the Operator Control Panel a

screen entitled "VPD Selection", where it is asking you to determine which copy of VPD should be written to the new Library Controller Card.

If the message "VPD Selection" is displayed at the Operator Control Panel, carefully highlight the "VPD from Enclosure" option to copy that version of the VPD to the new Library Controller Card. Then continue with the procedure.

Removal and Replacement

1. Power OFF the library by pressing and holding the power button at the front of the library for 4 seconds.
2. Disconnect the power cord from the electrical source, then from the power supply or supplies at the back of the library.
3. Loosen the two blue captive thumbscrews on the Library Controller Card.
4. Grasp the two thumbscrews and pull the defective Library Controller Card out of the library.



Figure 10-10. A Library Controller Card being removed from the library

5. Remove the packaging from the replacement Library Controller Card.
6. Grasp the two thumbscrews and push the replacement Library Controller Card into the library.
7. Tighten the two blue captive thumbscrews on the Library Controller Card.
8. Connect the power cord to the power supply or supplies at the back of the library, then to the electrical source.
9. Power ON the library using the power button on the front panel.
10. After power is restored to the Library Controller Card, the library will automatically restore the VPD on the new Library Controller Card from the Library Enclosure. If a "VPD Selection" message is displayed in the Operator Control Panel, see the "Read Me before Continuing" section earlier in this procedure to determine how to respond to the message.
11. Upgrade library firmware and drive firmware to the latest version. See "Service Library: Upgrade Firmware" on page 5-54.
12. Run the Library Verify test (refer to "Service: Library Verify" on page 5-26).

Note: Use care when selecting the appropriate VPD to restore from/to. An error in selection here could cause a long downtime.

13. Package the failed Library Controller Card in the same packaging in which the new control board was shipped to you and return to Dell.

Replacing Cartridge Magazines

To replace a cartridge magazine, refer to one of the following procedures:

- Using the Web User Interface, refer to “Manage Library: Release Magazine” on page 5-50.
- Using the Operator Control Panel, refer to “Control: Magazine” on page 5-17.
- If your library can not be powered ON, refer to “Releasing the Magazines Manually” on page 9-1.

Replacing the Library Enclosure

This procedure is necessary when the library accessor or display fails. These components are contained within the replacement library enclosure.

The replacement library enclosure includes cartridge magazines, a power supply, a Library Controller Card, and a packet of library foot pads. These items are included with the replacement library enclosure due to safety agency requirements. These unused parts will be removed from the replacement library enclosure and sent back to Dell installed in the defective library. The old parts currently in your defective library will be removed, and installed into the replacement library enclosure.

Note: To reduce the risk of personal injury or damage to equipment:

- observe local health and safety requirements and guidelines for manual material handling
- obtain adequate assistance to lift and stabilize the library during installation or removal

Minimum Installation Time: 1 hr.

Minimum Number of Persons Required: 2

Recommended Tools: #2 Phillips screw driver, paper clip, blank (or scratch) data cartridge

Preparing the Defective Library for Replacement

1. If possible, use the Operator Control Panel to unload any drives that contain a cartridge (**Control** → **Move Cartridges**).
2. Power OFF the defective library.
3. Disconnect the following cables from the rear panel of the defective library (as shown in . The configuration shown in this figure is used as an example only. This configuration is not recommended. Half height SCSI drives are not supported on the TL2000/TL4000.):
 - a. Power cord (**6**) – disconnect from the library’s power source, then from the rear of the library
 - b. Host interface cable (**1** , **2** , and/or **4**)
 - c. Ethernet cable (**5**), if necessary

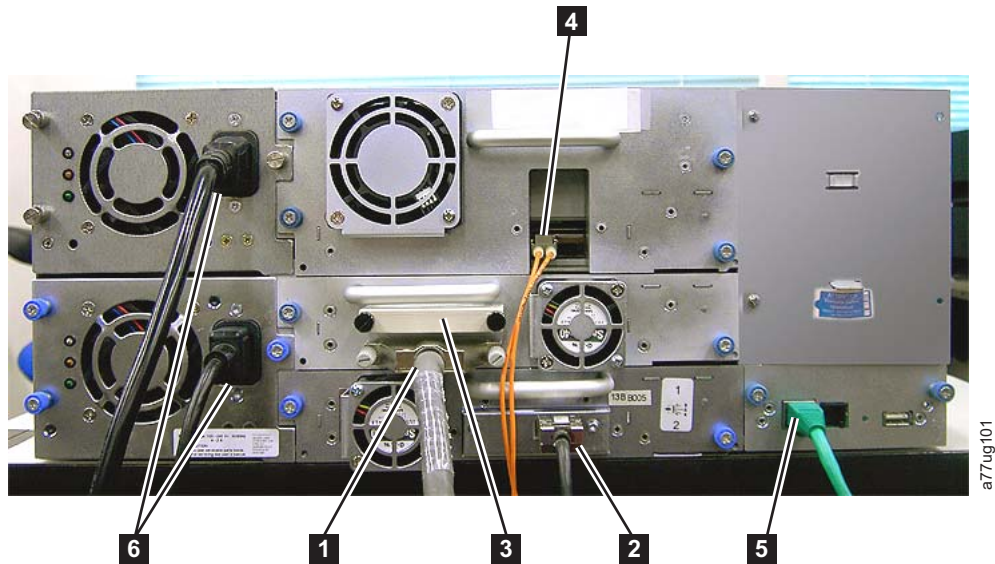


Figure 10-11. Rear panel of a 4U library with a Fibre Channel full height drive in the top position, a SCSI half height drive in the middle position, and a SAS half height drive in the bottom position

4. If the defective library is rack mounted, remove the two screws (**1** in Figure 10-12) from the front of the defective library anchoring the mounting brackets on the library to the rack. With assistance, remove the defective library from the rack.



Figure 10-12. Removing the two mounting bracket screws anchoring the library to the rack (one screw on each side of the library)

5. Place the defective library on a clean and sturdy work surface.
6. Proceed to “Unpacking and Preparing the Replacement Library Enclosure” on page 10-12.

Unpacking and Preparing the Replacement Library Enclosure

Before installing the replacement library enclosure, it is important to verify that the enclosure is functioning properly.

1. Unpack the replacement library enclosure and place it on a sturdy and clean work surface near the defective library. Save all packaging materials for returning the failing part(s) to Dell.
2. Choose one of the options below for installing the foot pads.

Important: Operating your library on a flat surface without foot pads may damage your library or cause it not to function properly.

- a. For a rack mounted library:
 - 1) Lift the replacement library enclosure slightly above the work surface, have another person place a foot pad under each corner of the library and on each side of the library halfway between the front and back.
 - 2) Gently set the replacement library enclosure on top of the feet. Adjust foot pad placement as necessary to stabilize the library. It is not necessary to permanently attach the foot pads to the library.
- b. For a desktop library:
 - 1) Carefully, lay the library on its side.
 - 2) Peel the adhesive from the back of each of the six foot pads.
 - 3) Install the foot pads on the bottom of the library enclosure by pressing each foot into one of the six areas (**1**) as shown in Figure 10-13 on page 10-13.

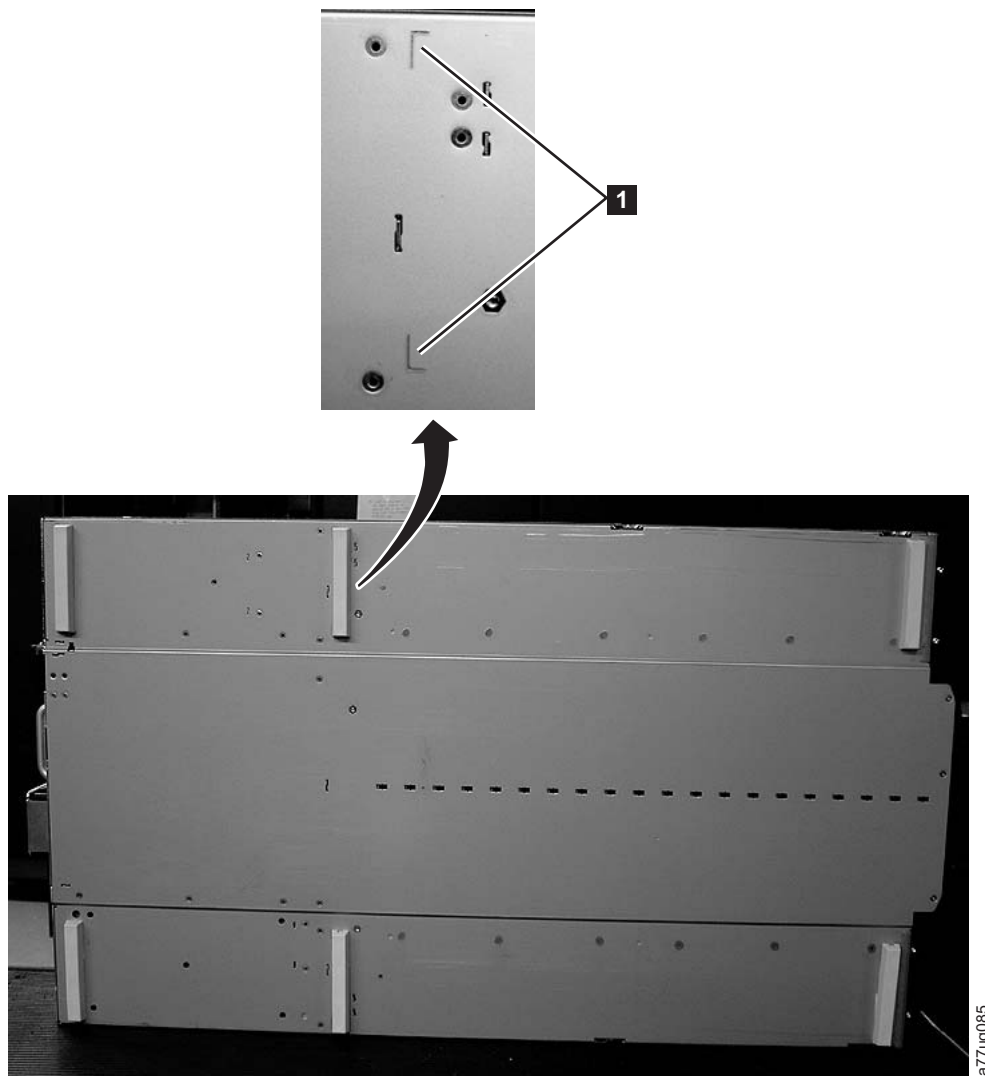


Figure 10-13. Foot pads installed on the bottom of the library enclosure

3. Carefully return the library to an upright position.
4. Remove the shipping lock from the top of the replacement library enclosure (see Figure 10-14 on page 10-14).

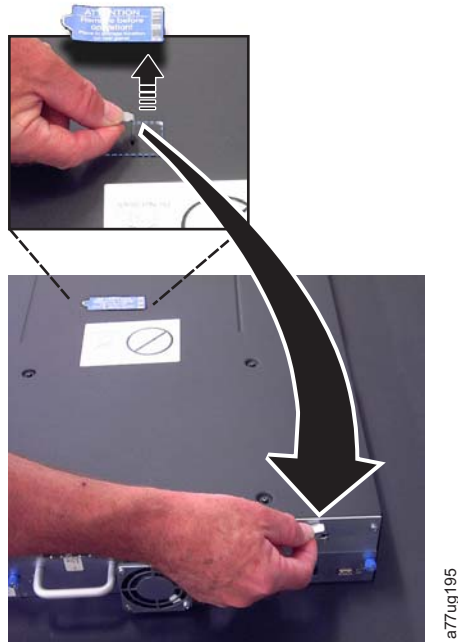


Figure 10-14. Removing the shipping label and lock from the top of the library and storing on the rear panel

5. Store the lock and label on the back panel of the replacement library enclosure (see Figure 10-15).



Figure 10-15. Library shipping lock and label storage location on the rear panel of the library

6. Proceed to “Swapping Library Controller Cards” on page 10-15.

Note: Do not power on the replacement library enclosure without first swapping the library controller cards. The library will not initialize with the library controller card shipped with the replacement library enclosure.

Swapping Library Controller Cards

IMPORTANT - READ ME BEFORE CONTINUING

The Library Enclosure contains a copy of the vital product data (VPD) for your library. The VPD contains your current library configuration. A primary copy of this VPD is contained within the Library Controller Card. A backup copy of this VPD is maintained on the accessor in the enclosure (or chassis). When the Library Enclosure is replaced, the new enclosure electronics should contain zeros (0's) in key VPD locations. Upon detection of these zeros, the library will automatically write VPD data to the replacement library enclosure from the primary copy of the VPD contained in the Library Controller Card. In rare occurrences, the replacement library enclosure may contain valid (non-zero) VPD data left over from having been installed previously in another library. If this occurs, the library firmware, which is expecting to see zeros in the VPD area, will instead detect valid VPD data, and will not know which copy of the VPD is the correct one. It will detect this VPD mismatch and display a message entitled "VPD Selection" on the Operator Control Panel. The library will need your input to determine which copy of VPD to write to the replacement library enclosure. If you are replacing both the Library enclosure and the Library Controller Card, transfer VPD after installing one part before installing the other.

If the message "VPD Selection" is displayed at the Operator Control Panel, carefully highlight the "VPD from Controller" option to copy VPD from the controller to the replacement library enclosure before selecting OK. Then continue with the procedure.

1. Swap the Library Controller Card in the defective library with the Library Controller Card in the replacement library enclosure.
 - a. Remove the Library Controller Card (see Figure 10-16 on page 10-16) in the defective library and in the replacement library enclosure. To remove a Library Controller Card:
 - 1) Loosen the two blue captive thumbscrews on the Library Controller Card.
 - 2) Grasp the thumbscrews and pull the card out of the library.
 - b. Install the Library Controller Card from the defective library in the replacement library enclosure. Install the Library Controller Card from the replacement library enclosure in the defective library to return to Dell. To install a Library Controller Card:
 - 1) Grasp the two blue captive thumbscrews and push the Library Controller Card into the library.
 - 2) Tighten the thumbscrews.

Note: You will hear a snap when the Library Controller Card is fully engaged and installed properly.



Figure 10-16. Removing a Library Controller Card from the library

2. Power ON the replacement library enclosure.
 - a. If power ON is successful:
 - 1) The replacement library enclosure will power up with the Ready/Activity LED (**1** in Figure 10-17 on page 10-17)
 - 2) After power is restored to the replacement library enclosure, the library will automatically restore the VPD on the replacement library enclosure from the Library Controller Card. If a "VPD Selection" message is displayed in the Operator Control Panel, see the "Read Me before Continuing" section earlier in this procedure to determine how to respond to the message.
 - 3) Power OFF the replacement library enclosure.
 - 4) Proceed to "Installing Your Drive(s) in the Replacement Library Enclosure" on page 10-17.
 - b. If power ON is not successful:
 - 1) The Error LED (**4** in Figure 10-17 on page 10-17) will turn ON. This indicates that the Library Controller Card from the defective library is not functioning properly.
 - 2) Power OFF the replacement library enclosure.
 - 3) Contact Technical Support for further instructions.

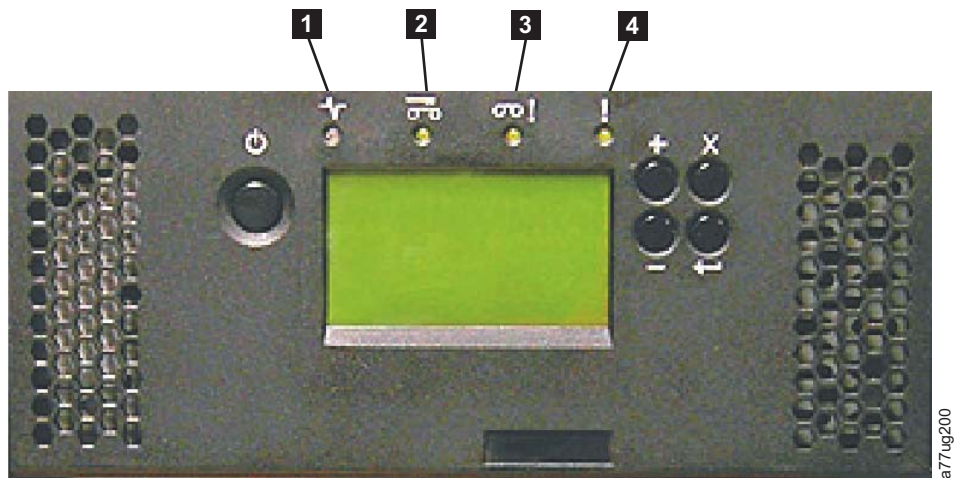


Figure 10-17. Library Front Panel LEDs

Table 10-1.

1	Ready/Activity LED (green)	3	Attention LED (amber)
2	Clean Drive LED (amber)	4	Error LED (amber)

Installing Your Drive(s) in the Replacement Library Enclosure

Note: It is important to install the drives from the defective library into the same positions in the replacement library enclosure in order to maintain your current library configuration.

1. Remove all drives from the defective library (see Figure 10-18 on page 10-18) and install them in the same positions in the replacement library enclosure.

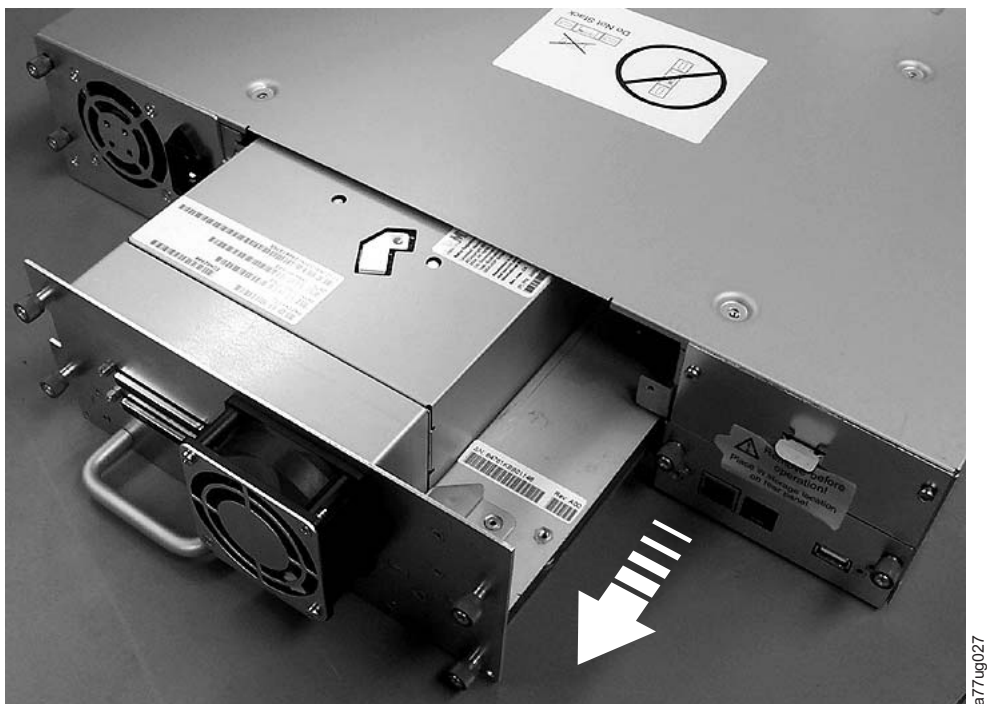


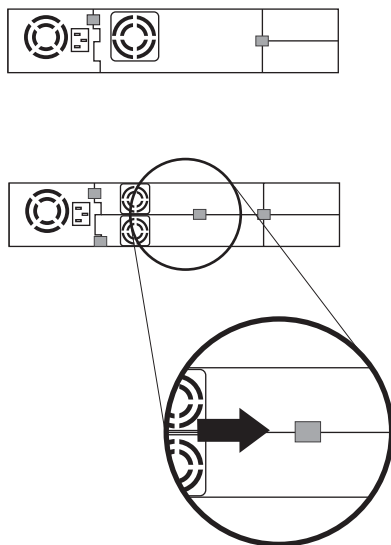
Figure 10-18. Removing a drive sled from the library (drive sled without ESD springs shown)

- a. On the rear of the defective library, loosen the blue captive thumbscrews on the drive.
- b. If necessary, remove the conductive tape from the drive sled.
- c. Pull straight back on the tape drive handle to remove it from the library.
- d. On the rear of the replacement library enclosure, extend the black pull-out tab located underneath the lower right corner of the lowest drive sled position.
- e. Slowly insert each tape drive into the replacement library enclosure in the same drive slot as it was positioned in the defective library. Align with the connectors on the library while supporting the drive assembly. Ensure that the black pull-out tab remains extended when inserting a drive sled in the lowest drive position in the library.
- f. Push in on the tape drive handle while supporting the bottom of the tape drive until it is properly seated.

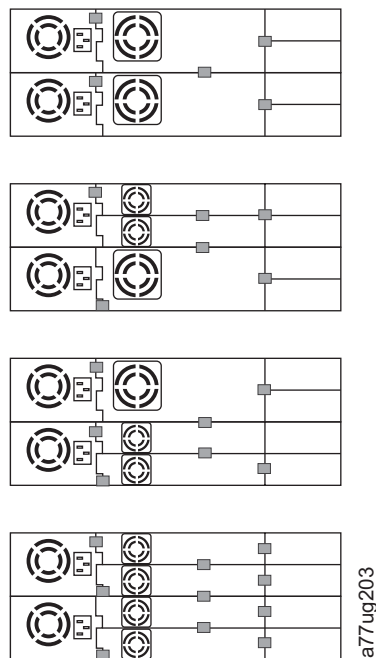
Important: Damage to the connector pins may occur if this procedure is not followed.

- g. Push the tape drive slowly into the drive slot until the drive is seated against the back of the library.
- h. Tighten the captive thumbscrews until the drive is secure.
- i. If installing a drive sled without ESD springs (see Figure 10-18), apply conductive tape as shown in Figure 10-19 on page 10-19.

2U Library



4U Library



a77ug203

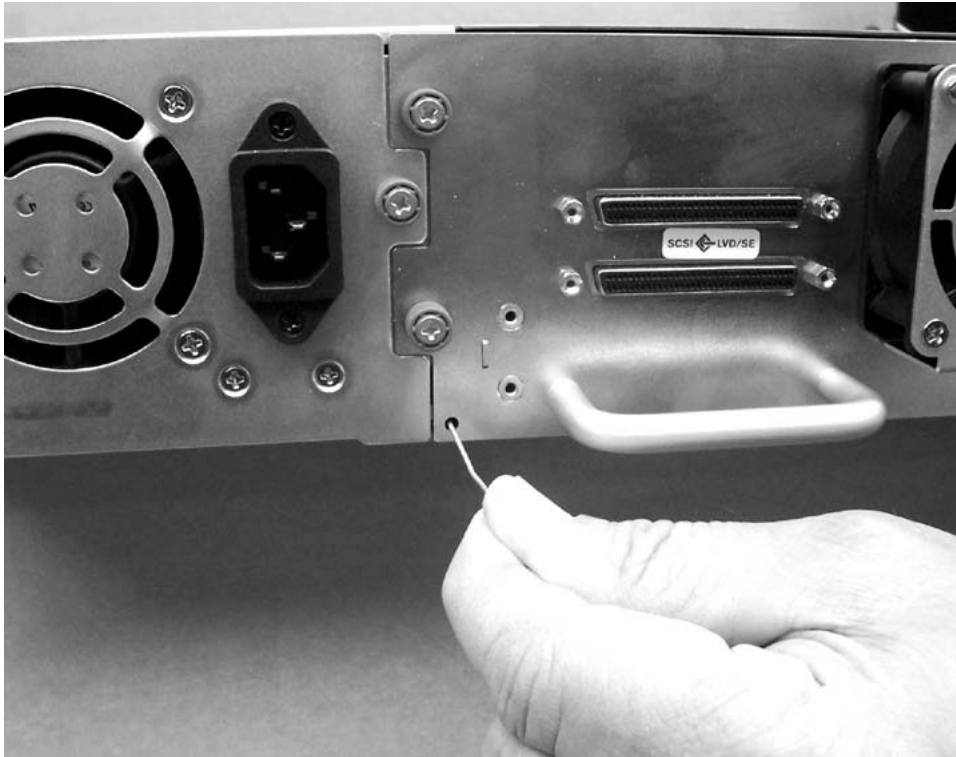
Figure 10-19. Drive sled taping diagrams

Note: The gray markers show where conductive tape should be placed.

- j. Push the black tab back underneath the drive sled. When inserted properly, only the handle of the tab will be visible.
2. Power ON the replacement library enclosure.
 - a. If power ON is successful:
 - 1) After power up, the Ready/Activity LED (**1** in Figure 10-17 on page 10-17) will turn ON.
 - 2) Proceed to “Swapping Cartridge Magazines.”
 - b. If power ON is not successful:
 - 1) The Error LED (**4** in Figure 10-17 on page 10-17) will turn ON.
 - 2) Power OFF the replacement library enclosure.
 - 3) Contact Technical Support for further instructions.

Swapping Cartridge Magazines

1. Manually release and remove all magazines from the defective library and from the replacement library enclosure. To release and remove a cartridge magazine:
 - a. Find the access holes for the right and left magazines (see Figure 10-20 on page 10-20 and Figure 10-21 on page 10-21).



a77ug025

Figure 10-20. Access hole for the left magazine (facing rear of library)

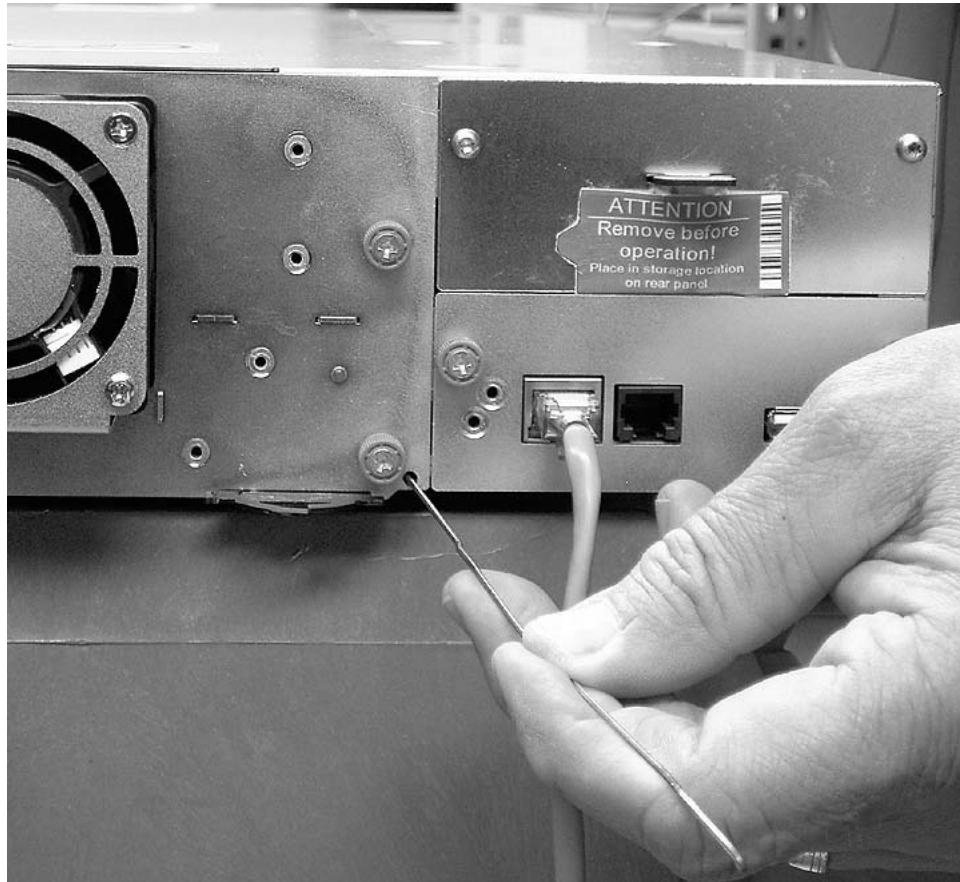


Figure 10-21. Access hole for the right magazine (facing rear of library)

- b. Push the end of a straightened paper clip into the access hole for each magazine at the back of the library. **DO NOT push the paper clip in more than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch.** While holding the paper clip, have a second person pull the magazine out of the front of the unit.

Note: Do not remove the other components from the defective library at this time.



Figure 10-22. Left magazine pulled out of a 4U library (facing front of library)

2. Insert the cartridge magazines removed from the defective library into the same positions in the replacement library enclosure.
3. Insert the cartridge magazines removed from the replacement library enclosure into the same positions in the defective library to return to Dell.
4. Wait for inventory of the magazines to complete.
 - a. If inventory is successful:
 - 1) The replacement library enclosure will complete with the Ready/Activity LED (**1** in Figure 10-17 on page 10-17) ON.
 - 2) Power OFF the replacement library enclosure.
 - 3) Proceed to “Swapping Library Controller Cards” on page 10-15.
 - b. If inventory is not successful:
 - 1) The Error LED (**4** in Figure 10-17 on page 10-17) will turn ON.
 - 2) Power OFF the enclosure.
 - 3) Contact Technical Support for further instructions.

Swapping Power Supplies

1. Unplug the power cord from the power source then from the replacement library enclosure.
2. Swap the Power Supply in the defective library with the Power Supply in the replacement library enclosure.
 - a. Remove the power supply from the defective library and from the replacement library enclosure. To remove a power supply from a library:
 - 1) Loosen the three blue captive thumbscrews on the power supply.
 - 2) Pull on two of the thumbscrews to pull the unit away from the rear panel of the library.

- 3) Grasp the top and bottom edges of the power supply and pull it out of the library.
- b. Install the power supply removed from the defective library in the replacement library enclosure. Install the power supply removed from the replacement library enclosure in the defective library to return to Dell. To install a power supply:
 - 1) Grasp two of the thumbscrews and push the power supply into the library.
 - 2) Tighten the thumbscrews.



Figure 10-23. A power supply being removed from a library

3. Plug the power cord into the replacement library enclosure then into a power source.
4. Power ON the replacement library enclosure.
 - a. If power ON is successful:
 - 1) The replacement library enclosure will power up with the Ready/Activity LED (**1** in “Unpacking and Preparing the Replacement Library Enclosure” on page 10-12) ON.
 - 2) Power OFF the replacement library enclosure.
 - 3) Unplug the power cord from the power source then from the library.
 - 4) Proceed to “Installing the Replacement Library Enclosure.”
 - b. If power ON is not successful, contact Technical Support for further instructions.

Installing the Replacement Library Enclosure

Refer to the appropriate procedure in this section (rack or desktop) for installing the replacement library enclosure.

Note: If you are shipping the replacement library enclosure to a remote location, install the shipping lock and label before shipment.

Rack Installation:

1. Remove the mounting brackets (**1** in Figure 10-24) and anchors (**2**) from each side of the defective library and install them on the replacement library enclosure.

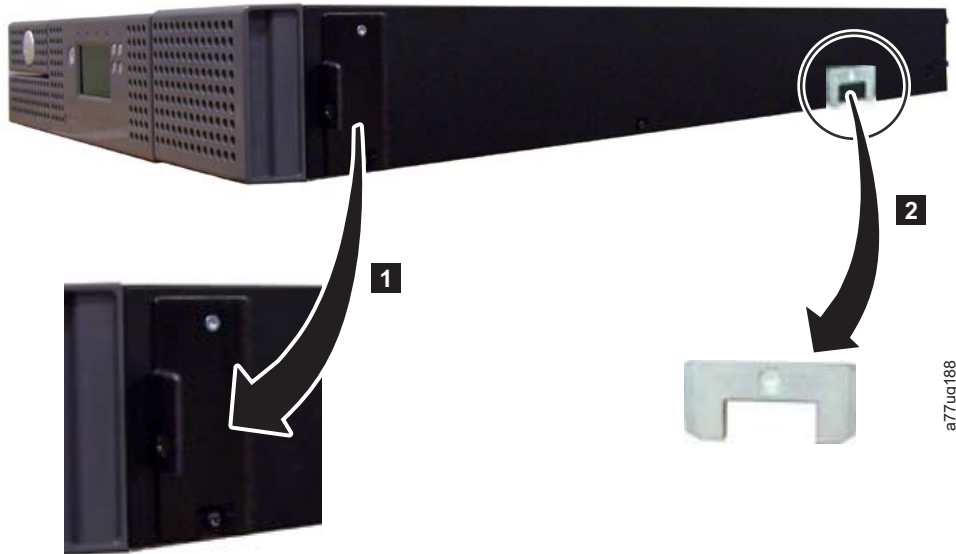


Figure 10-24. Mounting brackets and anchors for securing the library in a rack (one bracket and anchor on each side of the library)

2. With assistance, slide the replacement library enclosure onto the metal rails that are already in position in the rack (see Figure 10-25).

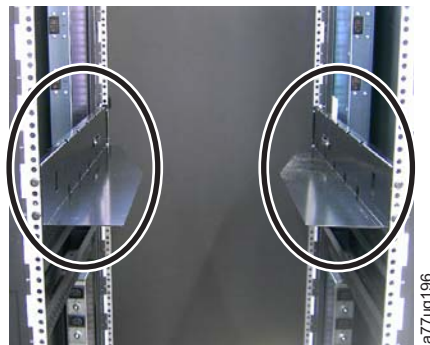


Figure 10-25. Front view of a rack showing the rails installed

3. Tighten the mounting bracket screws (**1** in Figure 10-12 on page 10-11) to anchor the replacement library enclosure to the rack.
4. Proceed to “Completing the Installation of the Replacement Library Enclosure” on page 10-25.

Desktop Installation:

1. Place the library in its permanent location.
2. Proceed to “Completing the Installation of the Replacement Library Enclosure” on page 10-25.

Completing the Installation of the Replacement Library Enclosure

1. Connect the following cables to the replacement library enclosure. (See Figure 10-11 on page 10-11).
 - a. Power cord (**6**)
 - b. Host interface cable (**1** , **2** , and/or **4**)
 - c. Ethernet cable (**5**), if necessary
2. Power ON the replacement library enclosure.
3. Upgrade library firmware and drive firmware to the latest version.
 - a. Visit <http://www.support.dell.com/> to download the latest levels of library and drive firmware.
 - b. Using the Web User Interface (**Service Library** → **Upgrade Firmware**), upgrade library and drive firmware.
4. Run the Library Verify test (Operator Control Panel: **Service** → **Library Verify**). This diagnostic requires a blank or scratch data cartridge.
5. Proceed to “Returning the Defective Library.”

Returning the Defective Library

1. Remove the shipping label (**2** in Figure 10-15 on page 10-14) and lock (**1**) from the rear panel of the defective library, place the lock in the slot located in the top center of the library, and secure with the shipping lock label. This will secure the library accessor for shipping.
2. Using the replacement library enclosure packaging materials, securely package the defective library (including the left and right magazines, Library Controller Card, and power supply removed from the replacement library enclosure) and return it, to Dell.

Important: Failure to return all of these components to Dell will result in you being charged for any missing components.

Appendix A. SCSI Element Types and Addresses

For an overview of library partitioning and element addressing, see “Library Partitioning and Element Addressing” on page A-2.

The following tables contain element addresses for the 2U library and the 4U library.

Table A-1. 2U library SCSI Element Types and Element Addresses

Element Type	Element Address Range
Media Transport (Accessor) Element (MTE)	1 (0x01)
I/O Station Element (IEE)	16 (0x10)
Data Transfer (Drive) Element (DTE)	256 (0x100), 257 (0x101)
Storage Elements (STE)	4096 (0x1000) - 4117 (0x1015)

Table A-2. 4U library SCSI Element Types and Element Addresses

Element Type	Element Address Range
Media Transport (Accessor) Element (MTE)	1 (0x01)
I/O Station Elements (IEE)	16 (0x10), 17 (0x11), 18 (0x12)
Data Transfer (Drives) Elements (DTE)	256 (0x100), 257 (0x101), 258 (0x102), 259 (0x103)
Storage Elements (STE)	4096 (0x1000) - 4139 (0x102B)

2U Library I/O Slot, Storage Slots and Drive Slot Element Addresses and Physical Locations

For an overview of library partitioning and element addressing, see “Library Partitioning and Element Addressing” on page A-2.

The following table contains the physical location and SCSI element address (decimal and hexadecimal) of the I/O slot, storage slots, and drive slot in the 2U library containing only one drive. If a second drive were installed, it would be located at address 257 (0x101).

Table A-3. 2U library SCSI element addresses for storage slots and drive slot

Left Magazine ⇐ Front of 2U library				Library Rear Panel	Right Magazine Front of 2U library ⇒			
Slot 8 4103 (0x1007)	Slot 9 4104 (0x1008)	Slot 10 4105 (0x1009)	Slot 11 4106 (0x100A)	Drive 1 256 (0x100)	Slot 23 4118 (0x1016)	Slot 22 4117 (0x1015)	Slot 21 4116 (0x1014)	Slot 20 4115 (0x1013)
Slot 4 4099 (0x1003)	Slot 5 4100 (0x1004)	Slot 6 4101 (0x1005)	Slot 7 4102 (0x1006)		Slot 19 4114 (0x1012)	Slot 18 4113 (0x1011)	Slot 17 4112 (0x1010)	Slot 16 4111 (0x100F)
I/O slot 16 (0x10)	Slot 1 4096 (0x1000)	Slot 2 4097 (0x1001)	Slot 3 4098 (0x1002)		Slot 15 4110 (0x100E)	Slot 14 4109 (0x100D)	Slot 13 4108 (0x100C)	Slot 12 4107 (0x100B)

4U Library I/O Slots, Storage Slots, and Drive Slots Element Addresses and Physical Locations

For an overview of library partitioning and element addressing, see “Library Partitioning and Element Addressing.”

The following table contains the physical location (Slot x) and SCSI element address in decimal (4xxx) and in hexadecimal (0x10xx) of the I/O slots, storage slots, and drive slots in the 4U library containing only two drive sleds.

In older 4U libraries where the Dedicated Cleaning Slot (DCS) is in a fixed location (slot 9) and elected by the user to be retained as a DCS (option to delete DCS is available in library firmware greater than 1.95), the above slot numbering and element address changes starting with slot 10. In 4U libraries with a DCS, the information shown in slot 9 below moves to slot 10 and so forth through the remaining magazine slots. The final slot is slot 44 instead of slot 45 for libraries without a DCS. See “Configuring I/O Stations and Reserving Slots” on page 5-57 for information on how to delete the dedicated cleaning slot. Once the DCS is deleted, you cannot get it back. You will have to create a reserved slot if you want to clean the drive(s).

Table A-4. 4U library SCSI element addresses for storage slots and drive slot

Upper Left Magazine ⇐Front of 4U library				Library Rear Panel	Upper Right Magazine Front of 4U library⇒			
Slot 18 4113 (0x1011)	Slot 19 4114 (0x1012)	Slot 20 4115 (0x1013)	Slot 21 4116 (0x1014)	Drive 2 257 (0x101)	Slot 45 4140 (0x102C)	Slot 44 4139 (0x102B)	Slot 43 4138 (0x102A)	Slot 42 4137 (0x1029)
Slot 14 4109 (0x100D)	Slot 15 4110 (0x100E)	Slot 16 4111 (0x100F)	Slot 17 4112 (0x1010)		Slot 41 4136 (0x1028)	Slot 40 4135 (0x1027)	Slot 39 4134 (0x1026)	Slot 38 4133 (0x1025)
Slot 10 4105 (0x1009)	Slot 11 4106 (0x100A)	Slot 12 4107 (0x100B)	Slot 13 4108 (0x100C)		Slot 37 4132 (0x1024)	Slot 36 4131 (0x1023)	Slot 35 4130 (0x1022)	Slot 34 4129 (0x1021)
Lower Left Magazine				Drive 1 256 (0x100)	Lower Right Magazine			
I/O Slot 3 18 (0x12)	Slot 7 4102 (0x1006)	Slot 8 4103 (0x1007)	Slot 9 4104 (0x1008)		Slot 33 4128 (0x1020)	Slot 32 4127 (0x101F)	Slot 31 4126 (0x101E)	Slot 30 4125 (0x101D)
I/O Slot 2 17 (0x11)	Slot 4 4099 (0x1003)	Slot 5 4100 (0x1004)	Slot 6 4101 (0x1005)		Slot 29 4124 (0x101C)	Slot 28 4123 (0x101B)	Slot 27 4122 (0x101A)	Slot 26 4121 (0x1019)
I/O Slot 1 16 (0x10)	Slot 1 4096 (0x1000)	Slot 2 4097 (0x1001)	Slot 3 4098 (0x1002)		Slot 25 4120 (0x1018)	Slot 24 4119 (0x1017)	Slot 23 4118 (0x1016)	Slot 22 4117 (0x1015)

Library Partitioning and Element Addressing

Library 4U systems with firmware versions of .80 and higher, and containing at least 2 drives, have the ability to configure two logical libraries (create two partitions). This partitioning has been expanded with the new library firmware and half-high drive integration. Now it is possible to configure 1, 2, 3 or 4 partitions in the 4U library. Additionally the 2U library can now be configured into one or two partitions. Each library must contain at least one drive per logical library (partition). In a partitioned library, the Operator Control Panel (OCP) only reports

the status of logical library 1 in the main menu due to space limitations. The user must navigate to the logical libraries status in the OCP to get the information on the additional library partitions.

Partitioning of 2U Libraries

When two half height drives are installed in a 2U library, the library firmware will support partitioning in the same way that the 4U supports partitioning with two full height drives today. The first partition will contain the first magazine and the first drive. The second partition will contain the second magazine and the second drive. The I/O station (if configured as I/O) will be shared, as is done with the partitioned 4U library.

One full height drive is "Drive 1". When using half height drives, the first half height drive position will be called "Drive 1", The second half height drive position will be called "Drive 2."

Partitioning of 4U Libraries

When one or more half height drives are added to a 4U library, the drive naming will change. Currently, the first full height drive is "Drive 1" and the second full height drive is "Drive 2". When you consider that each full height drive slot may contain one or two half height drives, there are four potential drives in the space that used to occupy two. As a result, the first half height drive position, or the first full-high drive position, will be called "Drive 1". The second half height drive position will be called "Drive 2". The third half height drive position, or the second full height drive position, will be called "Drive 3". The fourth half height drive position will be called "Drive 4".

Mixing of Drives

The library will support a mix of full height and half height drives in the same physical library and the same logical library. They will support a mix of Gen 3 and Gen 4 drives in the same physical library and the same logical library. They will also support a mix of SCSI, SAS, and Fibre Channel in the same physical library and the same logical library; however, mixing drive interface types in the same logical library is not recommended.

Configuration of a 1 Partition System

A one partition system configured for a 4U library contains any and all drives present in any drive positions, and it will contain all four magazines.

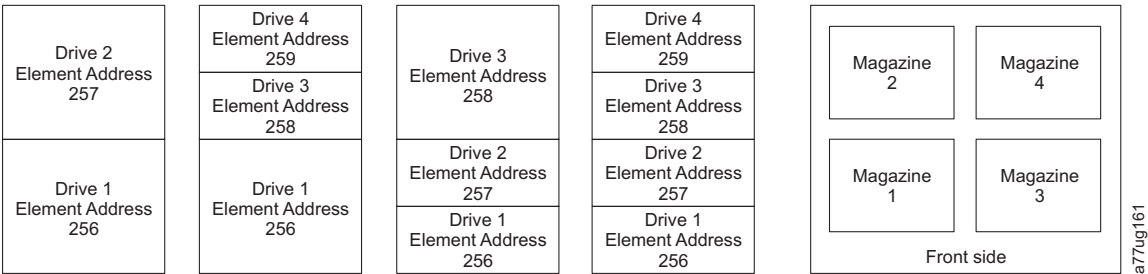


Figure A-1. Configuration of a One Partition System

Configuration of a 2 Partition System

A two partition system must have at least two drives installed. One drive must be installed in either drive position 1 or drive position 2, and another drive must be installed in either drive position 3 or drive position 4. Partition 1 will contain any drives in drive position 1 and drive position 2. Partition 1 will also contain magazine 1 and magazine 2. Partition 2 will contain any drives in drive position 3 and drive position 4. Partition 2 will also contain magazine 3 and magazine 4.

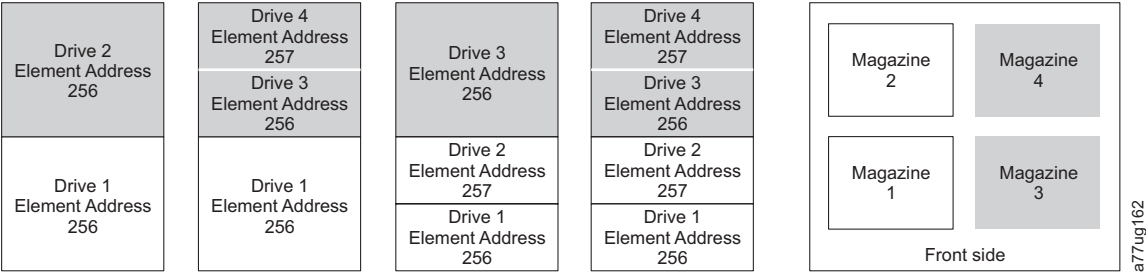


Figure A-2. Configuration of a Two Partition System

Configuration of a 3 Partition System

A three partition system must have at least three drives installed. A drive must be installed in drive position 1, another drive must be installed in drive position 2, and another drive must be installed in either drive position 3 or drive position 4. Partition 1 will contain the first drive and the first magazine. Partition 2 will contain the second drive and the second magazine. Partition 3 will contain any drives in drive position 3 and drive position 4. Partition 3 will also contain magazine 3 and magazine 4.

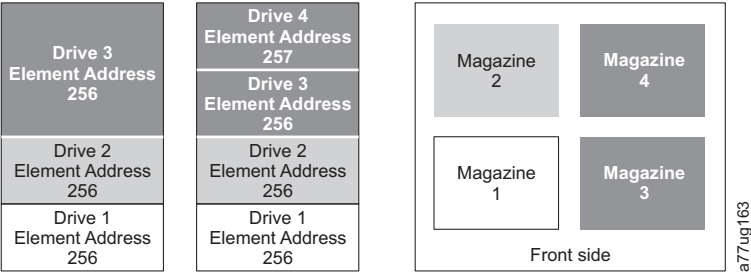


Figure A-3. Configuration of a Three Partition System

Configuration of a 4 Partition System

A four partition system must have four drives. Each partition will contain one drive and one magazine.

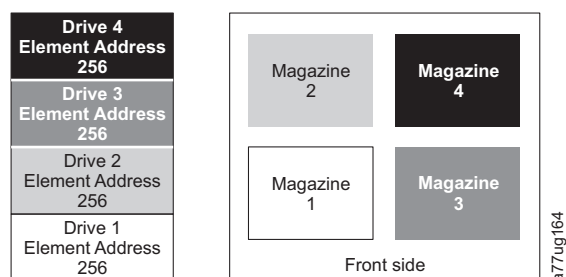


Figure A-4. Configuration of a Four Partition System

SCSI Element Addressing

Every logical library starts at the first drive slot with the current assigned element start address (default value 256). It will be incremented from the bottom to the top slots for every drive slot. There is one exception to this addressing scheme to accommodate libraries currently in the field. A 4U library which contains only full height drives will continue to have the addresses assignments 256 and 257, thus causing no interruptions to their operation. Drive slots will still be incremented by 1 for each drive slot position.

Note: Exchanging drives with different form factors will result in the library needing to be reconfigured.

4U Unit with only FH drives
(1 logical library)

SCSI Element	Slot
257	4
	3
256	2
	1

4U Unit with FH and HH drives
(1 logical library)

SCSI Element	Slot
258	4
	3
257	2
256	1

Figure A-5. Examples of SCSI Element Addressing

The SCSI specification does not allow gaps in the SCSI element addressing. Special handling is needed for empty drive slots to fulfill the specification. Also drives which are temporarily removed need to have their address preserved to not confuse the attached host and host application. Generally only drives are reported which are currently physically available or temporarily removed. Empty (unused) slots which are located at the bottom or the top should not be reported, with an exception in case of a “removed” condition. A drive slot which does not contain a drive and has a position between used slots needs to be reported as a SCSI element. To signal the host application that this slot is not usable, its ACCESS bit will be disabled.

Appendix B. TapeAlert Flags

This appendix is intended to provide additional information to the reader about the tape drive. All error code and diagnostic information contained in this chapter can be accessed from the Operator Control Panel of the Library. The drive portion of the Operator Control Panel Display will contain any drive error codes. Therefore there is no need to open the Library to access the buttons on the drive as described in this chapter.

TapeAlert is a standard that defines status conditions and problems experienced by devices such as tape drives, autoloaders, and libraries. The standard enables a server to read TapeAlert messages (called *flags*) from a tape drive via the SCSI bus. The server reads the flags from Log Sense Page 0x2E.

This library is compatible with TapeAlert technology, which provides error and diagnostic information about the drives and the library to the server. Because library and drive firmware may change periodically, the SNMP interface in the library does not require code changes if devices add additional TapeAlerts that are not supported today. However, should this occur the Management Information Block (MIB) is written to minimize impact to the SNMP monitoring station. At the time of this writing, the TapeAlert flags in this appendix correctly represent TapeAlerts that will be sent. The MIB file should not be taken to mean that all traps that are defined in the MIB will be sent by the library or that they will be sent in the future.

This appendix lists TapeAlert flags that are supported by the Ultrium 3 and Ultrium 4 Tape Drives.

TapeAlert Flags Supported by the Library

Parameter Code (d=decimal)	Flag name	Type	Description
01d	Library Hardware A	C	The media changer mechanism is having difficulty communicating with the drive: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Turn the library OFF then ON• Restart the operation If problem persists,
02d	Library Hardware B	W	There is a problem with the media changer mechanism. If the problem persists,
03d	Library Hardware C	C	The media changer has a hardware fault: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ensure that the media changer and drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library from the front panel.• If the problem persists,
04d	Library Hardware D	C	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ensure that the media changer and drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library from the front panel.• If the problem persists, go to

13d	Library Pick Retry	W	<p>There is a potential problem with the cartridge loader picking a cartridge from a drive or slot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No action needs to be taken at this time. • If the problem persists, <p>This flag is cleared when the next move command is received.</p>
14d	Library Place Retry	W	<p>There is a potential problem with the cartridge loader placing a cartridge into a slot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No action needs to be taken at this time. • If the problem persists, <p>This flag is cleared when the next move command is received.</p>
15d	Drive Load Retry	W	<p>There is a potential problem with the cartridge loader or drive when placing a cartridge into a drive.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No action needs to be taken at this time. • If the problem persists, <p>This flag is cleared when the next move command is received.</p>
17d	Library I/O Station	C	There is a mechanical problem with the library media I/O Station.
18d	Media Changer	C	It is set when a magazine is removed from the changer.
19d	Library Security	W	Library security has been compromised. The door was opened then closed during operation.
21d	Media Changer	I	It is set when the changer is set offline.
24d	Library Inventory	C	<p>The library has detected an inconsistency in its inventory.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Redo the library inventory to correct inconsistency. • Restart the operation. <p>Check the applications users manual or the hardware users manual for specific instructions on redoing the library inventory.</p>
25d	Media Changer	W	It is set when it receives unsupported SCSI opcodes.
27d	Cooling FAN Failure	W	One or more fans inside the library have failed. This flag is cleared when all fans are working again.
32d	Unreadable Bar Code Labels	I	The library was unable to read the barcode on a cartridge.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • D = Decimal • I = Informational suggestion to user • W = Warning. Remedial action is advised. Performance of data may be at risk. • C = Critical immediate remedial action is required. 			

TapeAlert Flags Supported by the Drive

Table B-1. TapeAlert Flags Supported by the Ultrium Tape Drive

Flag Number	Flag	Description	Action Required
3	Hard error	Set for any unrecoverable read, write, or positioning error. (This flag is set in conjunction with flags 4, 5, or 6.)	See the Action Required column for Flag Number 4, 5, or 6 in this table.
4	Media	Set for any unrecoverable read, write, or positioning error that is due to a faulty tape cartridge.	Replace the tape cartridge.
5	Read failure	Set for any unrecoverable read error where isolation is uncertain and failure could be due to a faulty tape cartridge or to faulty drive hardware.	If Flag 4 is also set, the cartridge is defective. Replace the tape cartridge.
6	Write failure	Set for any unrecoverable write or positioning error where isolation is uncertain and failure could be due to a faulty tape cartridge or to faulty drive hardware.	If Flag Number 9 is also set, make sure that the write-protect switch is set so that data can be written to the tape (see “Write-Protect Switch” on page 6-5)). If Flag Number 4 is also set, the cartridge is defective. Replace the tape cartridge.
7	Media life	Set when the tape cartridge reaches its end of life (EOL).	1. Copy the data to another tape cartridge. . 2. Discard the old (EOL) tape.
8	Not data grade	Set when the cartridge is not data-grade. Any data that you write to the tape is at risk.	Replace the tape with a data-grade tape.
9	Write protect	Set when the tape drive detects that the tape cartridge is write-protected.	Ensure that the cartridge’s write-protect switch is set so that the tape drive can write data to the tape (see “Write-Protect Switch” on page 6-5).
10	No removal	Set when the tape drive receives an UNLOAD command after the server prevented the tape cartridge from being removed.	Refer to the documentation for your server’s operating system.
11	Cleaning media	Set when you load a cleaning cartridge into the drive.	No action required.
12	Unsupported format	Set when you load an unsupported cartridge type into the drive or when the cartridge format has been corrupted.	Use a supported tape cartridge.
15	Cartridge memory chip failure	Set when a cartridge memory (CM) failure is detected on the loaded tape cartridge.	Replace the tape cartridge.
16	Forced eject	Set when you manually unload the tape cartridge while the drive was reading or writing.	No action required.
17	Media loaded is Read-only format	Set when a cartridge marked as read only is loaded into the drive. The flag is cleared when the cartridge is ejected.	No action required.

Table B-1. TapeAlert Flags Supported by the Ultrium Tape Drive (continued)

Flag Number	Flag	Description	Action Required
18	Tape directory corrupted in the cartridge memory	Set when the drive detects that the tape directory in the cartridge memory has been corrupted.	Re-read all data from the tape to rebuild the tape directory.
19	Nearing media life	Set when the tape cartridge is nearing its specified end of life. The flag is cleared when the cartridge is removed from the drive.	1. Copy the data to another tape cartridge. 2. Replace the tape cartridge.
20	Clean now	Set when the tape drive detects that it needs cleaning.	Clean the tape drive.
21	Clean periodic	Set when the drive detects that it needs routine cleaning.	Clean the tape drive as soon as possible. The drive can continue to operate, but you should clean the drive soon.
22	Expired clean	Set when the tape drive detects a cleaning cartridge that has expired.	Replace the cleaning cartridge.
23	Invalid cleaning tape	Set when the drive expects a cleaning cartridge and the loaded cartridge is not a cleaning cartridge.	Use a valid cleaning cartridge.
30	Hardware A	Set when a hardware failure occurs that requires that you reset the tape drive to recover.	
31	Hardware B	Set when the tape drive fails its internal Power-On Self Tests.	Note the error code on the single-character display, then
32	Interface	Set when the tape drive detects a problem with the host interface.	
33	Eject media	Set when a failure occurs that requires you to unload the cartridge from the drive.	Unload the tape cartridge, then reinsert it and restart the operation.
34	Download fail	Set when an FMR image is unsuccessfully downloaded to the tape drive through the host interface.	Ensure that it is the correct FMR image. Download the FMR image again.
37	Drive voltage	Set when the drive detects that the externally supplied voltages are either approaching the specified voltage limits or are outside the voltage limits.	
38	Predictive failure of drive hardware	Set when a hardware failure of the tape drive is predicted.	
39	Diagnostics required	Set when the drive detects a failure that requires diagnostics for isolation.	
51	Tape directory invalid at unload	Set when the tape directory on the tape cartridge that was previously unloaded is corrupted. The file-search performance is degraded.	Use your backup software to rebuild the tape directory by reading all the data.
52	Tape system area write failure	Set when the tape cartridge that was previously unloaded could not write its system area successfully.	Copy the data to another tape cartridge, then discard the old cartridge.

Table B-1. TapeAlert Flags Supported by the Ultrium Tape Drive (continued)

Flag Number	Flag	Description	Action Required
53	Tape system area read failure	Set when the tape system area could not be read successfully at load time.	Copy the data to another tape cartridge, then discard the old cartridge.
55	Loading Failure	When loading a tape into a drive, a hardware malfunction can prevent the tape from being loaded into the drive, or the tape may actually get stuck in the drive.	<p>Take this action if the tape cartridge will not load in the drive:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the tape cartridge from the library and inspect it for damage. If damaged, discard it. 2. Try another cartridge in that tape drive. If it still fails, replace the drive sled. See “Replacing a Tape Drive Sled” on page 10-3. <p>Take this action if the tape is stuck in the drive:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Attempt to unload the tape from the drive using the host backup application that is currently using the drive, or using the remote or local UI. 2. If the cartridge will not unload, contact technical support.
56	Unload Failure	When attempting to unload a tape cartridge, a drive hardware malfunction can prevent the tape from being ejected. The tape may actually be stuck in the drive.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Unload the cartridge from the drive using the Operator Control Panel (Control → Move Cartridge) or the Web User Interface (Manage Library → Move Media). 2. Cycle drive power using the Operator Control Panel (Service → Service → Drive Power) or the Web User Interface (Configure Library → Drives). 3. Try unloading the cartridge from the drive again using the Operator Control Panel (Control → Move Cartridge) or the Web User Interface (Manage Library → Move Media). 4. If the cartridge will not unload from the drive, contact technical support.
59	WORM Medium – integrity check failed	Set when the drive determines that the data on tape is suspect from a WORM point of view.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Copy the data to another WORM tape cartridge. 2. Discard the old WORM tape.
60	WORM Medium – Overwrite attempted	Set when the drive rejects a write operation because the rules for allowing WORM writes have not been met. Data can only be appended to WORM media. Overwrites to WORM media are not allowed.	Append the information on a WORM tape cartridge or write the data to a non-WORM cartridge.

Appendix C. Sense Data

When a drive encounters an error, it makes sense data available. You can use device drivers to examine the sense data and determine errors. . The device drivers may conflict with some commercial software applications unless properly configured. To avoid conflicts on Windows operating systems, refer to your device driver's procedures for setting the driver to manual startup mode.

If your application uses other device drivers, see the appropriate documentation for those drivers to obtain the sense data.

In addition to device drivers, other methods exist for obtaining sense data and error information. The sections that follow describe alternatives for gathering such information.

Library Sense Data

The following table lists the Additional Sense Codes (ASC) and Additional Sense Code Qualifiers (ASCQ) associated with the reported Sense Keys.

A sense key of 00h (no sense) has no ASC/ASCQ associated with it. A few ASC/ASCQs can be associated with more than one sense key. The sense keys that can give a particular ASC/ASCQ are indicated within the Sense Key column. ASC/ASCQs that can indicate an abnormal element state as part of element descriptor.

Table C-1. Library Sense Keys, ASC and ASCQ

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	Description
Recovered Error (01)	0Ah	00h	Error log overflow
	47h	00h	SCSI parity error
Not Ready (02)	00h	17h	Drive cleaning requested
	04h	00h	Cause not reportable
	04h	01h	In progress becoming ready, scanning magazines, etc.
	04h	02h	Initializing command required
	04h	03h	Manual intervention required
	04h	07h	Operation in progress
	04h	12h	Offline
	04h	83h	Door open
	04h	85h	Firmware upgrade in progress
	04h	87h	The drive is not enabled
	04h	88h	The drive is busy
	04h	89h	The drive is not empty
	04h	9Ah	Drive fibre down
	04h	8Eh	The media changer is in sequential mode
	30h	03h	Cleaning in progress
	3Bh	12h	Magazine removed

Table C-1. Library Sense Keys, ASC and ASCQ (continued)

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	Description
Medium Error (03)	30h	00h	Incompatible media installed
	30h	03h	Cleaning tape installed
	30h	07h	Cleaning failure

Table C-1. Library Sense Keys, ASC and ASCQ (continued)

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	Description
Hardware Error (04)	81h	80h	Cannot initialize bar code reader
	81h	81h	No response from bar code reader
	81h	82h	No response from EEPROM
	81h	83h	Slave robotic generic problem
	81h	84h	Setting of gripper pic value failed
	81h	85h	Setting of slider pic value failed
	81h	86h	Setting of elevator pic value failed
	81h	87h	Setting of rotation pic value failed
	81h	88h	Setting of sled pic value failed
	81h	89h	Gripper blocked
	81h	8Ah	Slider blocked
	81h	8Bh	Elevator blocked
	81h	8Ch	Rotation blocked
	81h	8Dh	Sled blocked
	81h	8Eh	Cannot find gripper block
	81h	8Fh	Cannot find slider block
	81h	90h	Cannot find elevator block
	81h	91h	Cannot find rotation block
	81h	92h	Cannot find sled block
	81h	93h	Gripper outside range
	81h	94h	Slider outside range
	81h	95h	Elevator outside range
	81h	96h	Rotation outside range
	81h	97h	Sled outside range
	81h	98h	No cartridge present sensor found
	81h	99h	No slider home sensor found
	81h	9Ah	No rotation home sensor found
	81h	9Bh	No sled position sensor found
	81h	9Ch	The range of gripper is wrong
	81h	9Dh	The range of slider is wrong
	81h	9Eh	The range of elevator is wrong
	81h	9Fh	The range of rotation is wrong
	81h	A0h	The range of sled is wrong
	81h	A1h	Open import/export element failed
	81h	A2h	Locking failed
	81h	A3h	SE2 Block
	81h	A4h	SE2 No Block
	81h	A5h	No Sled2 Home Sensor
	81h	A6h	No Elev Home Sensor

Table C-1. Library Sense Keys, ASC and ASCQ (continued)

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	Description
Hardware Error (04) (continued)	81h	B0h	Slave robotic controller response timeout
	81h	B1h	NACK received from slave robotic controller
	81h	B2h	Slave robotic controller communication failed
	81h	B3h	Slave robotic controller urgent stop
	81h	B4h	Cartridge did not transport completely
	81h	B5h	Slave robotic controller does not respond on command
	80h	C0h	Network init
	80h	C1h	Telnet interface
	80h	C2h	Webserver
	80h	C3h	EEPROM parameter
	80h	C4h	Cannot init LAN card
	80h	C5h	Write to EEPROM failed
	80h	C6h	Ping command did not reach target
	80h	C7h	Cannot upgrade from USB
	80h	D0h	ROM error
	80h	D1h	RAM error
	80h	D2h	NVRAM error
	80h	D3h	CTC error
	80h	D4h	UART error
	80h	D5h	Display error
	80h	D6h	Memory error
	80h	D7h	Fatal system error
	80h	D8h	dBase error
	80h	D9h	No SCSI IC detected
	80h	DAh	Different bar code labels
	80h	DBh	External cooling fan failure
	80h	DCh	Internal I2C bus error
	80h	DFh	Power Good failed
	80h	E0h	Incompatible Magazine
	82h	F0h	Over temperature problem
	82h	F1h	Drive communication error
	82h	F2h	Drive sled not present
	82h	F3h	Drive broken: needs repair
	82h	F4h	Drive load timeout
	82h	F5h	Drive unload timeout
	82h	F6h	Drive never present
	82h	F7h	Drive support ticket error

Table C-1. Library Sense Keys, ASC and ASCQ (continued)

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	Description
Illegal Request (05h)	1Ah	00h	Parameter length error
	20h	00h	Invalid command operation code
	21h	01h	Invalid element address
	24h	00h	Invalid field CDB
	3Dh	00h	SCSI invalid ID message
	25h	00h	Invalid LUN
	2Ch	00h	Command sequence error
	26h	00h	Invalid field in parameter list
	26h	01h	Parameter list error: parameter not supported
	26h	02h	Parameter value invalid
	26h	90h	Wrong firmware image, does not fit boot code
	26h	91h	Wrong personality firmware image
	26h	93h	Wrong firmware image, checksum error
	39h	00h	Saving parameters not supported
	3Bh	0Dh	Medium destination element full
	3Bh	0Eh	Medium source element empty
	3Bh	11h	Medium magazine not accessible
	3Bh	81h	Cartridge of other partition
	3Bh	A0h	Medium transfer element full
	53h	02h	Library media removal prevented state set
	53h	03h	Drive media removal prevented state set
	44h	80h	Bad status library controller
	44h	81h	Source not ready
	44h	82h	Destination not ready
	44h	83h	Cannot make reservation
	44h	84h	Wrong drive type
	44h	85h	Invalid slave robotic controller request
	44h	86h	Accessor not initialized
Unit Attention (06h)	28h	00h	Not ready to ready transition
	28h	01h	Import/export element accessed
	29h	01h	Power on occurred
	29h	02h	SCSI Bus reset occurred
	29h	05h	Bus type changed to Single Ended (SE)
	29h	06h	Bus type changed to Low Voltage Differential (LVD)
	2Ah	01h	Mode parameters changed
	2Ah	10h	Time stamp changed
	3Bh	13h	Medium magazine inserted
	3Fh	01h	Microcode has changed
	53h	02h	Media removal prevented

Table C-1. Library Sense Keys, ASC and ASCQ (continued)

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	Description
Command Aborted (0Bh)	3Fh	0Fh	ECHO buffer overwritten
	43h	00h	SCSI message error
	47h	00h	SCSI parity error
	49h	00h	SCSI invalid message
	4Eh	00h	Overlapped command attempt

Drive Sense Data

LTO Ultrium 4 drives contain hardware which performs user data write encryption and read decryption, protecting all user data written to the medium from unauthorized use, provided it is integrated into a secure system design.

Table C-2. LTO Tape Drive Sense Data

Byte	Bit Address or Name							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Address valid When set to 1, the info byte field contains a valid logical block address.	Error Code						
1	Segment Number (0)							
2	Filemark	EOM (end of medium)	ILI (Incorrect length indicator)	Reserved	Sense Key Description 0 - No sense 1 - Recovered error 2 - Not ready 3 - Media error 4 - Hardware error 5 - Illegal request 6 - Unit attention 7 - Data protect 8 - Blank Check 9 - Reserved A - Reserved B - Aborted command C - Reserved D - Volume overflow E - Reserved F - Reserved			
3	Information byte (most significant byte)							
4	Information byte							
5	Information byte							
6	Information byte (least significant byte)							
7	Additional Sense Length							
8-11	Command specific information							

Table C-2. LTO Tape Drive Sense Data (continued)

Byte	Bit Address or Name							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
12-13	Additional Sense Code (ASC) Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) Byte 12 Byte 13 ASC ASCQ							
00	00 - No additional sense - The flags in the sense data indicate the reason for the command failure							
00	01 - Filemark detected - A Read or Space command terminated early due to an FM. The FM flag is set.							
00	02 - EOM - A Write or Write File Marks command failed because the physical end of tape was encountered, or a Read or Space command encountered EOM. The EOM flag is set							
00	04 - BOM - A space command ended at Beginning of Tape. The EOM bit is also set							
00	05 - EOD - Read or Space command terminated early because End of Data was encountered							
04	00 - Cause not reportable - A cartridge is present in the drive, but it is in the process of being unloaded							
04	01 - Becoming Ready - A media access command was received during a front panel initiated load or an immediate reported load command							
04	02 - Initializing Command Required - A cartridge is present in the drive, but is not logically loaded. A Load command is required							
04	03 - Manual Intervention Required - A cartridge is present in the drive but could not be loaded or unloaded without manual intervention							
0C	00 - Write Error - A Write operation has failed. This is probably due to bad media, but may be hardware related							
11	00 - Unrecovered Read Error - A Read operation failed. This is probably due to bad media, but may be hardware related							
11	12 - Auxiliary memory read error. The drive reported that it is unable to read the Auxiliary Memory in a WORM cartridge.							
14	00 - Recorded Entity Not Found - A space or Locate command failed because a format violation prevented the target from being found.							
14	03 - End Of Data not found - A Read type operation failed because a format violation related to a missing EOD data set							
14	10 - Not Ready - Auxiliary memory not accessible. The drive is not able to become ready because it is unable to access the Auxiliary Memory in a WORM cartridge.							
1A	00 - Parameter list length error - The amount of parameter data sent is incorrect							
20	00 - Invalid Command Operation Code - The Operation Code in the command was not a valid Operation Code							
24	00 - Invalid field in CDB - An invalid field has been detected in a Command Descriptor Block							
25	00 - LUN not supported - The command was addressed to a non-existent logical unit number							
26	00 - Invalid Field in Parameter List - An invalid field has been detected in the data sent during the data phase							
27	00 - Write Protect - A Write type operation has been requested on a cartridge which has been write protected							
28	00 - Not Ready to Ready Transition - A cartridge has been loaded successfully into the drive and is now ready to be accessed							
29	00 - Reset - The drive has powered on, received a reset signal or a bus device reset signal since the initiator last accessed it							
2A	01 - Mode Parameters Changed - The Mode parameters for the drive have been changed by an initiator other than the one issuing the command							

Table C-2. LTO Tape Drive Sense Data (continued)

Byte	Bit Address or Name							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
12-13	Additional Sense Code (ASC) - Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) (Continued) Byte 12 Byte 13 ASC ASCQ							
30	00	- Incompatible Media Installed - A write type operation could not be executed because it is not supported on the cartridge type that is loaded.						
30	01	- Unknown Format - An operation could not be carried out because the cartridge in the drive is of a format not supported by the drive						
30	02	- Incompatible Format - An operation could not be completed because the Logical Format is not correct						
30	03	- Cleaning Cartridge Installed - An operation could not be carried out because the cartridge in the drive is a cleaning cartridge						
30	07	- Cleaning Failure - A cleaning operation was attempted, but could not be completed for some reason						
30	0C	- Data Protect - WORM overwrite attempted. The drive rejected a write operation because it would have resulted in an overwrite. Overwrite is not allowed on WORM media.						
30	0D	- Medium Error - WORM integrity check. The drive rejected a Read or Write operation because the cartridge is a suspicious WORM cartridge.						
31	00	- Media format corrupted - Data could not be read because the format on tape is not valid, but is a known format. A failure occurred attempting to write the FID						
37	00	- Rounded parameter - A Mode Select command parameter has been rounded because the drive can not store it with the accuracy of the command.						
3A	00	- Media Not Present - A media access command has been received when there is no cartridge loaded						
3B	00	- Sequential Positioning Error - A command has failed and left the logical position at an unexpected location						
3D	00	- Invalid bits in identify Message - An illegal Identify Message has been received at the drive at the start of a command						
3E	00	- Logical Unit has not Self-Configured - The drive has just powered on and has not completed its self test sequence and can not process commands						
3F	01	- Code Download - The firmware in the drive has just been changed by a Write Buffer command						
40	xx	- Diagnostic failure - A diagnostic test has failed. The xx (ASCQ) is a vendor specific code indicating the failing component.						
43	00	- Message Error - A message could not be sent or received due to excessive transmission errors						
44	00	- Internal target failure - A hardware failure has been detected in the drive that has caused the command to fail						
45	00	- Select/Reset Failure - An attempt to reselect an initiator in order to complete the command has failed						
4B	00	- Data Phase Error - A command could not be completed because too many parity errors occurred during the Data phase						
4E	00	- Overlapped Commands - An initiator selected the drive even though it already had a command outstanding in the drive						
50	00	- Write Append Error - A write type command failed because the point at which to append data was unreadable						
51	00	- Erase failure - An Erase command failed to erase the required area on the media						

Table C-2. LTO Tape Drive Sense Data (continued)

Byte	Bit Address or Name							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
12-13	Additional Sense Code (ASC) - Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) (Continued) Byte 12 Byte 13 ASC ASCQ							
52	00 - Cartridge fault - A command could not be completed due to a fault in the tape cartridge							
53	00 - Media Load/Eject Failed - (Sense Key 03) An attempt to load or eject the cartridge failed due to a problem with the cartridge.							
53	00 - Media Load/Eject Failed - (Sense Key 04) An attempt to load or eject the cartridge failed due to a problem with the drive							
53	02 - Media Removal Prevented - An Unload command has failed to eject the cartridge because media removal has been prevented							
5D	00 - Failure Prediction Threshold - Failure Prediction thresholds have been exceeded indicating that a failure may occur soon							
5D	FF - Failure Prediction False - A Mode Select command has been used to test for Failure Prediction system.							
82	82 - Drive requires cleaning - The drive has detected that a cleaning operation is required to maintain good operation							
82	83 - Bad Code Detected - The data transferred to the drive during a firmware upgrade is corrupt or incompatible with drive hardware							

Table C-2. LTO Tape Drive Sense Data (continued)

Byte	Bit Address or Name							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
12-13	Additional Sense Code (ASC) - Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) (Continued) Byte 12 Byte 13 ASC ASCQ Sense Key 0 (No Sense) EE 13 - Encryption - Key Translate EF 13 - Encryption - Key Translate EKM Sense Key 3 (Medium Error) 30 02 - Encryption - Encryption feature is not enabled so format/processing is not supported EE 60 - Encryption - Proxy Command Error EE D0 - Encryption - Data Read Decryption Failure EE D1 - Encryption - Data Read after Write Decryption Failure EE E0 - Encryption - Key Translation Failure EE E1 - Encryption - Key Translation Ambiguous EE F0 - Encryption - Decryption Fenced (Read) EE F1 - Encryption - Encryption Fenced (Write) Sense Key 4 (Hardware Error) EE 0E - Encryption - Key Service Timeout EE 0F - Encryption - Key Service Failure 40 00 - Encryption - Failure Hardware, POST or Module Failure Sense Key 5 (Illegal Request) EE 00 - Encryption - Key Service Not Enabled EE 01 - Encryption - Key Service Not Configured EE 02 - Encryption - Key Service Not Available EE 10 - Encryption - Key Required EE 20 - Encryption - Key Count Exceeded EE 21 - Encryption - Key Alias Exceeded EE 22 - Encryption - Key Reserved EE 23 - Encryption - Key Conflict EE 24 - Encryption - Key Method Change EE 25 - Encryption - Key Format Not Supported EE 26 - Encryption - Unauthorized Request - dAK EE 27 - Encryption - Unauthorized Request - dSK EE 28 - Encryption - Unauthorized Request - eAK EE 29 - Encryption - Authentication Failure EE 2A - Encryption - Invalid RDKi EE 2B - Encryption - Key Incorrect EE 2C - Encryption - Key Wrapping Failure EE 2D - Encryption - Sequencing Failure EE 2E - Encryption - Unsupported Type EE 2F - Encryption - New Key Encrypted Write Pending EE 30 - Encryption - Prohibited Request EE 31 - Encryption - Key Unknown EE 32 - Encryption - Keystore Related Problem EE 42 - Encryption - EKM Challenge Pending EE E2 - Encryption - Key Translation Disallowed EE FF - Encryption - Security Prohibited Function EF 01 - Encryption - Key Service Not Configured 26 11 - Encryption - Incomplete Key - Associate Data Set 26 12 - Encryption (T10) - Vendor Specific Reference Key Not Found 55 08 - Encryption (T10) - Maximum Number of Supplemental Keys Exceeded							

Table C-2. LTO Tape Drive Sense Data (continued)

Byte	Bit Address or Name							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
12-13	Sense Key 6 (Unit Attention) EE 12 - Encryption - Key Change Detected EE 18 - Encryption - Changed (Read) EE 19 - Encryption - Changed (Write) EE 40 - Encryption - EKM Identifier Changed EE 41 - Encryption - EKM Challenge Changed EE 50 - Encryption - Initiator Identifier Changed EE 51 - Encryption - Initiator Response Changed 2A 11 - Encryption - Data Encryption Parameters Changed by Another I_T Nexus 2A 12 - Encryption - Data Encryption Parameters Changed by Vendor Specific Event Sense Key 7 (Data Protect) EF 10 - Encryption - Key Required EF 11 - Encryption - Key Generation EF 13 - Encryption - Key Translate EF 1A - Encryption - Key Optional EF C0 - Encryption - No Operation 26 10 - Encryption - Data Decryption Key Fail Limit 2A 13 - Encryption - Data Encryption Key Instance Counter Has Changed 74 00 - Security Error 74 01 - Encryption - Unable to Decrypt Data 74 02 - Encryption - Unencrypted Data Encountered While Decrypting 74 03 - Encryption - Incorrect Data Encryption Key 74 04 - Encryption - Cryptographic Integrity Validation Failed 74 05 - Encryption - Error Decrypting Data							
14	FRU code							
15	SKSV	C/D	Reserved		BPV	Bit pointer		
					When set to 1, the bit pointer is valid.			
16 -17	SKSV = 0: First Error Fault Symptom Code (FSC). SKSV = 1: Field Pointer							
18-19	First Error Flag Data							
20	Reserved (0)							
21					CLN	Reserved	Reserved	VolValid
22-28	Volume Label							
29	Current Wrap							
30-33	Relative LPOS							
34	SCSI Address							
35	Frame number				Drive number			

Table C-2. LTO Tape Drive Sense Data (continued)

Byte	Bit Address or Name							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
36-39	<p>Port Identifier (Relative Target Port Address) Reporting Sense (This is the port address of the drive port through which sense is being reported.</p> <p>On Fibre Channel drives, it is the Fibre Channel Fabric Port Address [for example, 011E13 or 000026] with byte 36 being reserved.</p> <p>On SAS drives, it is the Hashed SAS Address of the drive port [for example, F32A94] with byte 36 being reserved.</p> <p>On SCSI, bytes 36 through 38 are reserved, and byte 39 is set to the port’s SCSI address [i.e., byte 39 = byte 34].)</p>							
40	Tape Directory Valid	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Relative Tgt Port Reporting Sense 0: Reserved 1: Relative Tgt Port 1 (Port 0) 2: Relative Tgt Port 2 (Port 1) 3: Relative Tgt Port 3 (Library Port)		
41	Host Command (SCSI Opcode)							
42	Density Type 0: No media present 1: Gen1 (384 track) 2: Gen2 (512 track) 3: Gen3 (704 track)				Media Type (Vendor Reserved)			
43	Volume Label Cartridge Type							
44								
45-48	Logical Block Number (Current LBA that would be reported in Read Position command)							
49-52	Data set Number							
53	1st Error FSC							
54								
55	1st Error Flag Data							
56								
57	2nd Error FSC							
58								
59	2nd Error Flag Data							
60								
61	Next-to-Last Error FSC							
62								
63	Next-to-Last Error Flag Data							
64								

Table C-2. LTO Tape Drive Sense Data (continued)

Byte	Bit Address or Name							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
65	Last Error FSC							
66								
67	Last Error Flag Data							
68								
69	LPOS Region							
70-85	ERP Summary Information							
86-89	Product Revision Level: YMDV (as defined in Standard Inquiry; this is also known as the Code Level)							
90-95	Reserved (0)							

The descriptions below serve only as an overview of sense reporting in the tape drive. This tape drive conforms to all sense field reporting as specified in the SCSI standards.

Note:

1. The Error Code field (Byte 0) is set to 70h to indicate a current error, that is one associated with the most recently received command. It is set to 71h to indicate a deferred error which is not associated with the current command.
2. The segment number (Byte 1) is zero since the Copy, Compare, and Copy and Verify commands are not supported.
3. The File Mark flag (Byte 2, bit 7) is set if a Space, Read, or Verify command did not complete because a file mark was read.
4. The End of Media (EOM) flag (Byte 2, bit 6) is set if a Write or Write File Marks command completed in the early warning area. Spacing into BOM also causes this flag to be set. It is also set on an attempt to read or space past EOD, or if an attempt is made to space into Beginning of Media.
5. The Illegal Length Indicator (ILI) flag (Byte 2, bit 5) is set if a Read or Verify ended because a block was read from tape that did not have the block length requested in the command.
6. The Information Bytes (Bytes 3-5) are only valid if the Valid flag is set. This occurs only for current errors and not for deferred errors.
7. The Field Replaceable Unit field (Byte 14) is set to either zero or to a non-zero, vendor-specific code indicating which part of the drive is suspected of causing the failure.
8. The Clean (CLN) flag (Byte 21, bit 3) is set if the drive needs cleaning and clear otherwise.
9. The Volume Label Fields Valid (VolValid) bit (Byte 21, bit 0) is set if the Volume Label being reported is valid.
10. The Volume Label field (Bytes 22-28) reports the volume label if a cartridge is loaded in the drive and Volume Label Fields Valid is set.
11. The Current Wrap field (Byte 29) reports the physical wrap of the tape. The least significant bit reflects the current physical direction. A 0

means that the current direction is away from the physical beginning of the tape. A 1 means that the current direction is towards the physical beginning of the tape.

12. Relative LPOS fields (Bytes 30-33) reports the current physical position on the tape.
13. SCSI Address field (Byte 34) reports the SCSI Bus Address for the drive. Values returned range from 00h to 0Fh.
14. This field (Byte 35) contains the frame and drive number, passed across the RS-422 serial interface.

Appendix D. Enabling LUN Support in Linux

To verify the detection of a tape drive, administrators should check for its entry in `/proc/scsi/scsi`. Current versions of Linux may not scan the logical storage unit (LUN) ID of every device. This can result in some PowerVault devices not being identified or listed in the `/proc/scsi/scsi` output. Administrators can follow these steps to enable support for such devices.

1. Type `cat /proc/scsi/scsi`. The output will look similar to the following:

```
Attached devices:
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 00
  Vendor:   IBM Model: ULTRIUM-TD3   Rev: 5BG2
  Type:     Sequential-Access  ANSI SCSI revision: 03
```

2. Identify the host adapter, channel number, target ID number, and LUN number for the first LUN of the device to be configured. In this example, the Certance Ultrium 2 (a drive in the PowerVault 124T) is shown at the address, or nexus, 3 0 0 0 — which means host adapter 3, channel number 0, ID 0, and LUN 0. The PowerVault 124T always has the tape drive at LUN 0 and the robot at LUN 1.
3. For each LUN that needs to be discovered by Linux, issue the following command: `echo "scsi-add-single-device H C I L">/proc/scsi/scsi` H C I L refers to the nexus described in step 2. So, with the PowerVault 124T robot configured at LUN 1, type: `echo "scsi-add-single-device 3 0 0 1">/proc/scsi/scsi`. The echo command will force a scan of each device at the given nexus.
4. Type `cat /proc/scsi/scsi` again to verify that all devices are now listed. The output will look similar to the following:

```
Attached devices:
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 00
  Vendor:   IBM Model: ULTRIUM-TD3   Rev: 5BG2
  Type:     Sequential-Access  ANSI SCSI revision: 03

Attached devices:
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 01
  Vendor:   DELL Model: PV-124T   Rev: V31
  Type:     Sequential-Access  ANSI SCSI revision: 03
```

Administrators should add the echo command to the Linux boot scripts because the device information is not persistent and must be created each time the system boots up. One example file that can be used for storing the commands is `/etc/rc.local`. Note that configuring additional devices on a server or a storage area network (SAN) can cause the devices to be reordered, which requires administrators to modify the commands. If the Fibre Channel adapter supports Persistent Bindings or an equivalent function, it can be enabled to reduce the chance of devices being reordered upon discovery.

Note: This procedure must be run each time the server is booted. Also, if backup application services are running (for example, they automatically start when the OS loads), they must be disabled and re-enabled after the above procedure.

The other way to enable LUN support is to recompile the kernel and enable LUN scanning in the Adaptec driver, but it requires advanced knowledge of Linux and will not be covered here. However, it will allow the server to always boot and see the device without any manual procedures.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux

RHEL doesn't automatically probe all LUNs on SCSI devices. The symptom shows LUN 0, which would be the drive, but not the loader.

1. Type `#cat /proc/scsi/scsi`.

```
Attached devices:
Host: scsi0 Channel: 00 Id: 06 Lun: 00
      Vendor: CERTANCE Model: ULTRIUM 2 Rev: 1826
      Type:   Sequential-Access   ANSI SCSI revision: 03
```

2. You will need to add the following to `/etc/modules.conf`
`options scsi_mod max_scsi_luns=255`

Note: In RHEL 4, it is `max_luns=255`

3. Once that's added, you will have to rebuild the `initrd` and reboot the server. There is a way to test this before editing the files and rebooting, but there's too much of a risk of taking down other SCSI devices in the process. Rebuilding the `initrd` will be the tricky part. You have to know exactly which kernel version you want to use to do this properly. You can find out the kernel version by using the `uname` command.

```
#uname -r
2.4.9-e.38
```

Note: There is a list of known kernel versions on the Red Hat Enterprise Linux page.

4. So, given the version is 2.4.9-e.38

```
# cp /boot/initrd-2.4.9-e.38.img /boot/initrd-2.4.9-e.38.img.bak
# mkinitrd -f -v /boot/initrd-2.4.9-e.38.img 2.4.9-e.38
```

This should give some output, then go to a new prompt. If it gives any errors, check the syntax you put into `/etc/modules.conf` or contact someone knowledgeable with Linux.

5. If successful, the server WILL need to be rebooted. Once it comes back up, check `/proc/scsi/scsi` again.

```
#cat /proc/scsi/scsi
Attached devices:
Host: scsi0 Channel: 00 Id: 06 Lun: 00
      Vendor: CERTANCE Model: ULTRIUM 2   Rev: 1826
      Type:   Sequential-Access   ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi0 Channel: 00 Id: 06 Lun: 01
      Vendor: DELL   Model: PV-124T       Rev: V31
      Type:   Medium Changer   ANSI SCSI revision: 03
```

Enabling LUN Support in Netware

1. From the System Console, verify the LUN device is not being detected by using the `list storage adapters` command. Typical output where only the tape drive is being recognized:

```
0x08 [V321-A3] Adaptec SCSI Card 39160/3960D - Ultra160 SCSI [slot 201]
0x15 [V321-A3-D5:0] IBM ULTRIUM-TD3 5BG2
0x09 [V321-A4] Adaptec SCSI Card 39160/3960D - Ultra160 SCSI [slot 202]
```

2. From the System Console, type `nwconfig`.
3. Select **NCF files Options** from the Configuration Options screen.
4. Select **Edit STARTUP.NCF** from the Available NCF Files Options screen.

5. Add the /LUNS switch to the load line of the appropriate SCSI driver. If a dual channel card is installed and the user is unsure which channel the LUN device is attached to, simply edit both lines.

```
LOAD ADPT160M.HAM SLOT=201 /LUNS
LOAD ADPT160M.HAM SLOT=202 /LUNS
```

6. After the STARTUP.NCF file has been edited, save the file and reboot the server to activate the new STARTUP.NCF.
7. Upon reboot navigate to the System Console and type scan all. This will start a scan of all the LUNS on each adapter.
8. When the scan is complete, verify the LUN device has been detected using the list storage adapters command. Typical output with both the tape drive and loader being recognized:

```
0x08 [V321-A3] Adaptec SCSI Card 39160/3960D - Ultra160 SCSI [slot 201]
    0x16 [V321-A3-D5:1] DELL PV-124T 0031
    0x15 [V321-A3-D5:0] IBM ULTRIUM-TD3 5BG2
0x09 [V321-A4] Adaptec SCSI Card 39160/3960D - Ultra160 SCSI [slot 202]
```

Netware may display **unbound device**, meaning a driver is not bound to the loader unless a driver from a backup software is loaded. This does not prevent the backup application from detecting the LUN and binding the appropriate driver.

Note: The user must type the command **scan all** upon OS boot every time. If backup software services automatically start on OS boot, the user must disable them, run the scan all command, and re-enable the services.

Appendix E. Notes on IPv6 Compatibility with Windows 2003/XP and 2008/Vista

IPv6 addressing is different from traditional IPv4 addressing. IPv4 addressing is listed in the format 255.255.255.255, with each value 1 byte, a total address of 4 bytes. IPv6 addresses require 16 bytes, and are listed in the format FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF, where there are 8 segments each 2 bytes long.

Windows 2003/XP

IPv6 support in Windows 2003 is not turned on by default. Use the following instructions to enable IPv6 support.

1. Go to **Control Panel** → **Network Connections**, and right-click on the Local Area Connection interface that is to be enabled with IPv6 support.
2. Select **Properties** from the drop-down menu, and the **Local Area Connection Properties** window should open. Click on the **Install** button.
3. In the new **Select Network Component Type** window, select **Protocol** and click on the **Add** button.
4. In the **Select Network Protocol** window, select **Microsoft TCP/IP version 6** and click on the **OK** button. IPv6 is now enabled.

Windows 2003 and XP comes with a WinINet API that does not fully support IPv6 literals. Upgrading to Internet Explorer 7 in Windows 2003 is recommended for IPv6 browser support as the WinINet API is updated with the installation of Internet Explorer 7. Third party browsers (such as Firefox) also use the WinINet API either directly or indirectly, so an upgrade to IE7 will be recommended for all users.

As multiple IPv6 addresses can be associated with one physical interface, Windows 2003 and XP use an interface number associated with each link-local IPv6 address that must be included for connectivity to any link-local IPv6 address. The interface number then must be appended to any outgoing IPv6 traffic; otherwise, the IPv6 packet does not know which logical interface to egress from.

The interface number can be determined through the command line of Windows.

1. Go to **Start** → **Run** and type **cmd** to enter the command prompt.
2. At the command prompt, type **ipconfig** and find the link-local IPv6 address. Appended to the end of this will be a %x where x is the interface number.

Browser connectivity to a global unicast IPv6 address

- Global unicast IPv6 addresses can be browsed to by entering this syntax into the browser address line: `HYPERLINK "http://[%3cIPv6_Global_Unicast_Address%3e]/"http://<[IPv6_Global_Unicast_Address>]/`
- The IPv6 address must be enclosed in square brackets ("[]").

Browser connectivity to a link-local IPv6 address

- The IPv6 address cannot be entered into a browser window in the same way an IPv4 address is when connecting via a link-local IPv6 address.

- After upgrading the WinInet API (by upgrading to IE 7), the library RMU can be accessed from the browser by using the following format.
 - Replace all : with -.
 - Append **s<interface#>.ipv6-literal.net** to the end of the IPv6 address.
 - For example, if the IPv6 address is **fe80::1234:5678:abc** and the interface number is **13**, the address to browse to would be **http://fe80--1234-5678-abcs13.ipv6-literal.net**.
- Using the same IPv6 address as above, another alternative to this would be to edit the hosts file in the **<Windows Base Directory>\system32\drivers\etc** directory and add the following line: **fe80::1234:5678:abc%13<hostname>** .
 - The address to browse to would be HYPERLINK "**http://%3choostname%3e/"http://<hostname>**
 - Note that the interface number can change with a reboot of the Windows host.

Windows 2008/Vista

Windows 2008 and Vista natively support IPv6. Also, interface numbers have been removed from these versions of Windows. All that is needed to browse to an address would be to add brackets ([]) around the IPv6 address. Thus, if the TL2000/4000 IPv6 address is **fe80::1234:5678:abc**, enter **http://[fe80::1234:5678:abc]** into the browser window. This is applicable for both link-local and global unicast IPv6 addresses.

Notes on IPv6 Compatibility with Linux

1. While IPv6 is supported under Linux, IPv6 literals for link-local addresses are not currently supported in Linux browsers, so the RMU will not be accessible in Linux via a link-local IPv6 address. Global unicast IPv6 addresses are supported in the same manner as in Windows 2008/Vista browsers.
2. The RMU will still be accessible through IPv4.

Appendix F. Library Configuration Form

Use this form when planning your library configuration. Keep this document in a secure location and update it when changes are made to the library configuration.

General Information				
Library type	TL2000		TL4000	
Library Serial Number				
Library name				
I/O Station	Enabled		Disabled	
AutoClean	Enabled		Disabled	
Library Network Settings				
DHCP	Enabled		Disabled	
IP Address				
Netmask Address				
Gateway Address				
Logical Libraries				
Number in library	1	2	3	4
Mode	Random: ON/OFF Sequential: ON/OFF Autoload: ON/OFF Loop: ON/OFF	Random: ON/OFF Sequential: ON/OFF Autoload: ON/OFF Loop: ON/OFF	Random: ON/OFF Sequential: ON/OFF Autoload: ON/OFF Loop: ON/OFF	Random: ON/OFF Sequential: ON/OFF Autoload: ON/OFF Loop: ON/OFF
Magazine Assignment	<input type="checkbox"/> Upper Left <input type="checkbox"/> Lower Left <input type="checkbox"/> Upper Right <input type="checkbox"/> Lower Right	<input type="checkbox"/> Upper Left <input type="checkbox"/> Lower Left <input type="checkbox"/> Upper Right <input type="checkbox"/> Lower Right	<input type="checkbox"/> Upper Left <input type="checkbox"/> Lower Left <input type="checkbox"/> Upper Right <input type="checkbox"/> Lower Right	<input type="checkbox"/> Upper Left <input type="checkbox"/> Lower Left <input type="checkbox"/> Upper Right <input type="checkbox"/> Lower Right
Number of Active Slots				
Drive Serial Numbers	4U Position 4: 4U Position 3: 2U/4U Position 2: 2U/4U Position 1:	4U Position 4: 4U Position 3: 2U/4U Position 2: 2U/4U Position 1:	4U Position 4: 4U Position 3: 2U/4U Position 2: 2U/4U Position 1:	4U Position 4: 4U Position 3: 2U/4U Position 2: 2U/4U Position 1:
Drive types	4U Position 4: 4U Position 3: 2U/4U Position 2: 2U/4U Position 1:	4U Position 4: 4U Position 3: 2U/4U Position 2: 2U/4U Position 1:	4U Position 4: 4U Position 4: 4U Position 3: 2U/4U Position 2: 2U/4U Position 1:4U Position 3: 2U/4U Position 2: 2U/4U Position 1:	4U Position 4:4U Position 3:2U/4U Position 2:2U/4U Position 1:
Fibre Channel Drive settings	Logical Library: Position: Speed: Port type: Loop ID:	Logical Library: Position: Speed: Port type: Loop ID:	Logical Library: Position: Speed: Port type: Loop ID:	Logical Library: Position: Speed: Port type: Loop ID:

SAS Drive settings	Logical Library: Position: ID:	Logical Library: Position: ID:	Logical Library: Position: ID:	Logical Library: Position: ID:
SCSI Drive settings	Logical Library: Position: ID:	Logical Library: Position: ID:	Logical Library: Position: ID:	Logical Library: Position: ID:
User Accounts				
Role: Password:				
Role: Password:				
Role: Password:				
Role: Password:				

Notices

Trademarks

Trademarks used in this text: Dell, the Dell logo, and PowerVault are trademarks of Dell Inc. Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Other trademarks and trade names may be used in this document to refer to either the entities claiming the marks and names or their products. Dell Inc. disclaims any proprietary interest in trademarks and trade names other than its own.

Glossary

This glossary defines the special terms, abbreviations, and acronyms that are used in this publication.

Numbers

2:1 compression. The relationship between the quantity of data that can be stored with compression as compared to the quantity of data that can be stored without compression. In 2:1 compression, twice as much data can be stored with compression as can be stored without compression.

A

A. Ampere.

ac. Alternating current.

access method. A technique for moving data between main storage and input or output devices.

accessor. This component contains the library robot and bar code reader. The accessor moves cartridges to and from the I/O Station, storage slots, and tape drives.

adapter card. A circuit board that adds function to a computer.

adj. Adjustment.

AH. The Authentication Header (AH) is intended to guarantee connectionless integrity and data origin authentication of IP datagrams. Further, it can optionally protect against replay attacks by using the sliding window technique and discarding old packets.

alphanumeric. Pertaining to a character set that contains letters, numerals, and usually other characters, such as punctuation marks.

alter. To change.

ambient temperature. The temperature of air or other media in a designated area, particularly the area surrounding equipment.

AME. Application Managed Encryption

ampere (A). A unit of measure for electric current that is equivalent to a flow of one coulomb per second, or to the current produced by one volt applied across a resistance of one ohm.

ANSI. American National Standards Institute.

archive. To collect and store files in a designated place.

ASCII. American National Standard Code for Information Interchange. A 7 bit coded character set (8 bits including parity check) that consists of control characters and graphic characters.

assigning a device. The establishing of the relationship of a device to a running task, process, job, or program.

assignment. The naming of a specific device to perform a function.

asynchronous. Pertaining to two or more processes that do not depend upon the occurrence of specific events such as common timing signals.

attention (notice). A word for calling attention to the possibility of danger to a program, device, or system, or to data. Contrast with *caution* and *danger*.

ATTN. Attention.

B

backup. To make additional copies of documents or software for safekeeping.

bar code. A code representing characters by sets of parallel bars of varying thickness and separation which are read optically by transverse scanning.

bar code label. Paper bearing a bar code and having an adhesive backing. The bar code label must be affixed to a tape cartridge to enable the library to identify the cartridge and its volume serial number.

bar code reader. A laser device specialized for scanning and reading bar codes and converting them into either the ASCII or EBCDIC digital character code.

Beginning of Partition. See *BOP*.

bezel. Decorative and safety cover.

bicolored. Having two colors.

bit. Either of the digits 0 or 1 when used in the binary numbering system.

BOM or bill of materials. A list of specific types and amounts of direct materials expected to be used to produce a given job or quantity of output.

BOP. BOP (Beginning of Partition) is a SCSI notion, which in a single partition format is the same as

beginning of tape. It means that policy is determined on writes at LB (logical block) zero (the first block in the partition). Appending to a tape [or overwriting at a non-zero LB] does not change the policy already in use for that tape.

Border Gateway Protocol (BGP). BGP is the core routing protocol of the Internet. It works by maintaining a table of IP networks or 'prefixes' which designate network reachability among autonomous systems (AS).

browser. A client program that initiates requests to a Web server and displays the information that the server returns.

buffer. A routine or storage used to compensate for a difference in rate of flow of data or time of occurrence of events, when transferring data from one device to another.

bus. A facility for transferring data between several devices located between two end points, only one device being able to transmit at a given moment.

byte. A string consisting of a certain number of bits (usually 8) that are treated as a unit and represent a character. A fundamental data unit.

C

capacity. The amount of data that can be contained on storage media and expressed in bytes of data.

cartridge storage slot. Individual slot located within a magazine that is used to house tape cartridges.

caution (notice). A word to call attention to possible personal harm to people. Contrast with *attention* and *danger*.

centimeter (cm). One one-hundredth of a meter (0.01 m). Approximately 0.39 inch.

channel command. An instruction that directs a data channel, control unit, or device to perform an operation or set of operations.

char. Character.

CHK. Check.

cleaning cartridge. A tape cartridge that is used to clean the heads of a tape drive. Contrast with *data cartridge*.

command. A control signal that initiates an action or the start of a sequence of actions.

compact disc (CD). A disc, usually 4.75 inches in diameter, from which data is read optically by means of a laser.

compression. The process of eliminating gaps, empty fields, redundancies, and unnecessary data to shorten the length of records or blocks.

concurrent. Refers to diagnostic procedures that can be run on one control unit while the rest of the subsystem remains available for customer applications.

contingent connection. A connection between a channel path and a drive caused when a unit check occurs during an I/O operation.

controller. A device that provides the interface between a system and one or more tape drives.

control path drive. A drive that communicates messages from the host computer to the library in which the drive is installed.

CP. Circuit protector.

ctrl. Control.

CU. Control unit.

D

danger (notice). A word to call attention to possible lethal harm to people. Contrast with *attention* and *caution*.

data. Any representations such as characters or analog quantities to which meaning is or might be assigned.

data buffer. The storage buffer in the control unit. This buffer is used to increase the data transfer rate between the control unit and the channel.

data cartridge. A tape cartridge dedicated to storing data. Contrast with *cleaning cartridge*.

data check. A synchronous or asynchronous indication of a condition caused by invalid data or incorrect positioning of data.

dc. Direct current.

DCS. Designated Cleaning Slot

degauss. To make a magnetic tape nonmagnetic by means of electrical coils carrying currents that neutralize the magnetism of the tape.

degausser. A device that makes magnetic tape nonmagnetic.

degradation. A decrease in quality of output or throughput or an increase in machine error rate.

degraded. Decreased in quality of output or throughput or increased machine error rate.

Density reporting. This setting determines whether the drive shows or masks encryption. This settings

affects host reporting of density and is included to support legacy needs for transparency. The default of not masking encrypted densities means that the host can see a different density code for encrypted vs non-encrypted tapes (x72 [enc] as opposed to x52 [non-enc]). This feature masks this so the drive reports the primary density only. Normally this is set to the drive default (which is to show encr density). If a legacy setup will not work with a new density code being reported [for whatever software reason] this will allow transparent encryption to still be used.

deserialize. To change from serial-by-bit to parallel-by-byte.

detented. A part being held in position with a catch or lever.

device. Any hardware component or peripheral, such as a tape drive or tape library, that can receive and send data.

device driver. A file that contains the code needed to use an attached device.

DHCPv6. The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6. Although IPv6's stateless address autoconfiguration removes the primary motivation for DHCP in IPv4, DHCPv6 can still be used to statefully assign addresses if the network administrator desires more control over addressing.

DIAG. Diagnostic section of maintenance information manual.

differential. See *High Voltage Differential (HVD)*.

direct access storage. A storage device in which the access time is independent of the location of the data.

display contrast. On the Operator Control Panel (OCP), the brightness of the display can be set by setting the contrast from **1** (the brightest) to **10** (the lightest).

dll. Dynamic link library: Microsoft's implementation of the shared library concept. These libraries usually have the file extension DLL, OCX (for libraries containing ActiveX controls), or DRV (for legacy system drivers).

download. (1) To transfer programs or data from a computer to a connected device, typically a personal computer. (2) To transfer data from a computer to a connected device, such as a workstation or microcomputer.

DRAM. Dynamic random-access memory.

drive, magnetic tape. A mechanism for moving magnetic tape and controlling its movement.

Drive Not Configured. This message occurs during the first boot after a factory settings restore is executed. This is not a real issue since it takes the library a while to configure.

DRV. Drive.

DSE. Data security erase.

DSP. Digital signal processor.

E

EBCDIC. Extended binary-coded decimal interchange code.

EC. Edge connector. Engineering change.

ECC. Error correction code.

EEPROM. Electrically erasable programmable read-only memory.

EIA. Electronics Industries Association.

EIA unit. A unit of measure, established by the Electronic Industries Association, equal to 44.45 millimeters (1.75 inches).

eject. To remove or force out from within.

EKM. The Encryption Key Manager application

EKM Server Settings. Maintaining primary and secondary EKM servers is desired for maximum availability of encrypted backup and recovery. These settings are required for Library Managed Encryption only.

electronic mail. Correspondence in the form of messages transmitted between user terminals over a computer network.

email. See *electronic mail*.

encryption. To alter (a file, for example) using a secret code so as to be unintelligible to unauthorized parties. An encryption enabled drive contains the necessary hardware and firmware to encrypt and decrypt host tape application data. Encryption policy and encryption keys are provided by the host application or host server.

EPO. Emergency power off.

EPROM. Erasable programmable read only memory.

EQC. Equipment check.

equipment check. An asynchronous indication of a malfunction.

Error log. A dataset or file in a product or system where error information is stored for later access.

ESD. Electrostatic discharge.

ESP. The Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) protocol provides origin authenticity, integrity, and confidentiality protection of a packet. ESP also supports encryption-only and authentication-only configurations, but using encryption without authentication is strongly discouraged because it is insecure.

F

fault symptom code (FSC). A hexadecimal code generated by the drive or the control unit microcode in response to a detected subsystem error.

FCC. Federal communications commission.

fiducial. A target used for teaching a physical location to a robot.

field replaceable unit (FRU). An assembly that is replaced in its entirety when any one of its components fails.

file. A named set of records stored or processed as a unit. Also referred to as a dataset.

file protection. The processes and procedures established in an information system that are designed to inhibit unauthorized access to, contamination of, or deletion of a file.

file transfer protocol (FTP). In the Internet suite of protocols, an application layer protocol that uses TCP and Telnet services to transfer bulk-data files between machines or hosts.

firmware. Proprietary code that is usually delivered as microcode as part of an operating system. Firmware is more efficient than software loaded from an alterable medium and more adaptable to change than pure hardware circuitry. An example of firmware is the Basic Input/Output System (BIOS) in read-only memory (ROM) on a PC motherboard.

FLASH EEPROM. An electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM) that can be updated.

FMR. Field microcode replacement.

format. The arrangement or layout of data on a data medium.

formatter. Part of a magnetic tape subsystem that performs data conversion, speed matching, encoding, first level error recovery, and interfaces to one or more tape drives.

FP. File protect.

frayed. Damaged as if by an abrasive substance.

FRU. Field replaceable unit.

FSC. Fault symptom code.

FSI. Fault symptom index.

functional microcode. Microcode that is resident in the machine during normal customer operation.

G

g. Gram.

GB. gigabyte.

GBIC. Gigabit Interface Converter.

Gbi. gigabit

gigabit (Gbit). 1 000 000 000 bits.

gigabyte (GB). 1 000 000 000 bytes.

Gigabit Interface Converter (GBIC). Converts copper interface to optic interface.

gnd. Ground.

H

hertz (Hz). Unit of frequency. One hertz equals one cycle per second.

hex. Hexadecimal.

High Voltage Differential (HVD). A logic signaling system that enables data communication between a supported host and the library. HVD signaling uses a paired plus and minus signal level to reduce the effects of noise on the SCSI bus. Any noise injected into the signal is present in both a plus and minus state, and is thereby canceled. Synonymous with *differential*.

HVD. SCSI Bus High Voltage Differential

Hz. Hertz (cycles per second).

I

ID. Identifier.

identifier (ID). (1) In programming languages, a lexical unit that names a language object; for example, the names of variables, arrays, records, labels, or procedures. An identifier usually consists of a letter optionally followed by letters, digits, or other characters. (2) One or more characters used to identify or name data element and possibly to indicate certain properties of that data element. (3) A sequence of bits or characters that identifies a program, device, or system to another program, device, or system.

IML. Initial microprogram load.

Incomp. Mag.. Incompatible Magazine: This message appears on the Operator Control Panel during library initializing. It occurs during factory restore or VPD. This is not a real issue since it takes the library a while to configure.

initial microprogram load (IML). The action of loading a microprogram from an external storage to writable control storage.

initiator. The component that executes a command. The initiator can be the host system or the tape control unit.

INST. Installation.

interface. A shared boundary. An interface might be a hardware component to link two devices or it might be a portion of storage or registers accessed by two or more computer programs.

Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4). A network layer protocol for packet-switched internetworks. IPv4 supports 2^{32} (about 4.3 billion) addresses.

Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6). A network layer protocol for packet-switched internetworks. It is designated as the successor of IPv4, the current version of the Internet Protocol, for general use on the Internet. The main improvement brought by IPv6 is the increase in the number of addresses available for networked devices, allowing, for example, each mobile phone and mobile electronic device to have its own address.

intervention required. Manual action is needed.

INTRO. Introduction.

I/O. Input/output.

IOP. Input/output processor.

IP address. An identifier for a computer or device on a TCP/IP network. Networks using the TCP/IP protocol route messages based on the IP address of the destination. The format of an IP address is a 32-bit numeric address written as four numbers separated by periods. Each number can be zero to 255. For example, 1.160.10.240 could be an IP address.

IPL. Initial program load.

IPsec. IPsec (or Internet Protocol Security) provides an additional level of security for IPv6 users.

IP Stack. The IP Stack manages static IP addresses.

IPv4. A network layer protocol for packet-switched internetworks. IPv4 supports 2^{32} (about 4.3 billion) addresses.

IPv6. A network layer protocol for packet-switched internetworks. It is designated as the successor of IPv4, the current version of the Internet Protocol, for general use on the Internet. IPv6 supports approximately 5×10^{28} addresses for each of the roughly 6.5 billion people alive today.

ISV. Independent software vendor.

ITST. Idle-time self-test.

K

Key Path. This is the path used for transferring an encryption key. This setting is dependent upon the encryption method selected.

kilogram (kg). One thousand grams (approximately 2.2 pounds).

km. kilometer. 1000 Meters, Approximately 5/8 mile.

L

LAN. Local area network. A computer network within a limited area.

LCD. See *liquid crystal display*.

LED. Light-emitting diode.

Library recovery. The 2U and 4U library firmware will generally retry failed operations up to three times before posting a failure to complete the operation, or, in some situations, proceeding with an operation that can be completed in an alternative manner.

Linear Tape-Open (LTO). A type of tape storage technology developed by the IBM Corporation, Hewlett-Packard, and Certance. LTO technology is an "open format" technology, which means that its users will have multiple sources of product and media. The "open" nature of LTO technology enables compatibility between different vendors' offerings by ensuring that vendors comply with verification standards. The LTO technology is implemented in two formats: the Accelis format focuses on fast access; the Ultrium format focuses on high capacity. The Ultrium format is the preferred format when capacity (rather than fast access) is the key storage consideration. An Ultrium cartridge has a compressed data capacity of up to 800 GB (2:1 compression) and a native data capacity of up to 400 GB.

Link-local address. An address having link-only scope that can be used to reach neighboring nodes attached to the same link. All interfaces have a link-local unicast address.

liquid crystal display (LCD). A low-power display technology used in computers and other I/O devices.

loadable. Having the ability to be loaded.

LME. Library Managed Encryption

LTO cartridge memory (LTO-CM). Within each LTO Ultrium data cartridge, an embedded electronics and interface module that can store and retrieve a cartridge's historical usage and other information.

LVD. SCSI Bus Low Voltage Differential

M

MAC Address. The Media Access Control address of a computer networking device.

magnetic tape. A tape with a magnetical surface layer on which data can be stored by magnetic recording.

MAP. Maintenance analysis procedure.

mask. A pattern of characters that controls the retention or elimination of portions of another pattern of characters. To use a pattern of characters to control the retention or elimination of portions of another pattern of characters.

master file. A file used as an authority in a given job and that is relatively permanent, even though its contents may change. Synonymous with main file.

Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU). The size of the largest packet that a network protocol can transmit.

MB. Mega Byte (usually expressed as data rate in MB/s or MB/second).

media capacity. The amount of data that can be contained on a storage medium, expressed in bytes of data.

media-type identifier. Pertaining to the bar code on the bar code label of the Ultrium Tape Cartridge, a 2-character code, L1, that represents information about the cartridge. L identifies the cartridge as one that can be read by devices which incorporate LTO technology; 1 indicates that it is the first generation of its type.

mega. One million of.

meter. In the Metric System, the basic unit of length; equal to approximately 39.37 inches.

MIB file. Management Information Block

micro. One millionth of.

microcode. (1) One or more micro instructions. (2) A code, representing the instructions of an instruction set, implemented in a part of storage that is not program-addressable. (3) To design, write, and test one or more micro instructions. (4) See also *microprogram*.

microdiagnostic routine. A program that runs under the control of a supervisor, usually to identify field replaceable units.

microdiagnostic utility. A program that is run by the customer engineer to test the machine.

microinstruction. A basic or elementary machine instruction.

microprogram. A group of microinstructions that when executed performs a preplanned function.

The term microprogram represents a dynamic arrangement or selection of one or more groups of microinstructions for execution to perform a particular function. The term microcode represents microinstructions used in a product as an alternative to hard-wired circuitry to implement certain functions of a processor or other system component.

MIM. Media information message.

mm. Millimeter.

modifier. That which changes the meaning.

mount a device. To assign an I/O device with a request to the operator.

MP. Microprocessor.

ms. Millisecond.

MSG. Message.

multipath. Pertaining to using more than one path.

N

N/A. Not applicable.

Network Address Translation (NAT). NAT involves rewriting the source and/or destination addresses of IP packets as they pass through a Router or firewall. Most systems using NAT do so in order to enable multiple hosts on a private network to access the Internet using a single public IP address.

node. In a network, a point at which one or more functional units connect channels or data circuits.

NVS. Nonvolatile storage. A storage device whose contents are not lost when power is cut off.

O

oersted. The unit of magnetic field strength in the unrationalized centimeter-gram-second (cgs) electromagnetic system. The oersted is the magnetic field strength in the interior of an elongated, uniformly

wound solenoid that is excited with a linear current density in its winding of one ampere per 4π centimeters of axial length.

offline. Pertaining to the operation of a functional unit without the continual control of a computer. Contrast with *online*.

online. Pertaining to the operation of a functional unit that is under the continual control of a computer. Contrast with *offline*.

OPER. Operation.

ov. Over voltage.

overrun. Loss of data because a receiving device is unable to accept data at the rate it is transmitted.

overtightening. To tighten too much.

P

parameter. A variable that is given a constant value for a specified application and that may denote the application.

p bit. Parity bit.

PC. Parity check.

PCC. Power control compartment.

PDF. Portable Document Format.

PE. Parity error. Product engineer.

pick. Pertaining to the library, to remove, by means of a robotic device, a tape cartridge from a storage slot or drive.

picker. See *Accessor*.

PM. Preventive maintenance.

POR. Power-on reset.

port. A physical connection for communication between the drive/library and the host processor.

Portable Document Format (PDF). A standard specified by Adobe Systems, Incorporated, for the electronic distribution of documents. PDF files are compact, can be distributed globally (via e-mail, the Web, intranets, or CD-ROM), and can be viewed with the Acrobat Reader, which is software from Adobe Systems that can be downloaded at no cost from the Adobe Systems home page.

PROM. Programmable read only memory.

PS. Power supply.

PWR. Power.

R

rack. A unit that houses the components of a storage subsystem, such as the library.

rackmount kit. A packaged collection of articles used to install the rack mounted version of the library.

RAM. Random access memory.

Random access memory. A storage device into which data is entered and from which data is retrieved in a nonsequential manner.

RAS. Reliability, availability, and serviceability.

record. A collection of related data or words, treated as a unit.

recording density. The number of bits in a single linear track measured per unit of length of the recording medium.

recoverable error. An error condition that allows continued execution of a program.

ref. Reference.

reg. Register.

re-inventory. To inventory again.

retention. The process or function of tightening the tape onto the cartridge, if it is sensed that the tape has a loose wrap on the cartridge.

RFC (Request for Comments). Request for Comments (RFC) documents are a series of memoranda encompassing new research, innovations, and methodologies applicable to Internet technologies.

RH. Relative humidity.

robot. Accessor.

robotics. Accessor assembly.

Router Assigned IPv6 Address. IPv6 addresses created by the network router and assigned to the library (similar to DHCP).

RPQ. Request for price quotation.

R/W. Read/write.

S

s. Seconds of time.

scratch cartridge. A data cartridge that contains no useful data, but can be written to with new data.

SCSI. Small computer system interface.

SE. Single-ended.

Secure Sockets Layer. See *SSL*.

segment. A part.

sel. Select.

Serial Attached SCSI (SAS). A drive sled with a SAS interface can be linked directly to controllers. SAS is a performance improvement over traditional SCSI because SAS enables multiple devices (up to 128) of different sizes and types to be connected simultaneously with thinner and longer cables; its full-duplex signal transmission supports 3.0 Gb/s. In addition, SAS drives can be hot-plugged.

serialize. To change from parallel-by-byte to serial-by-bit.

serializer. A device that converts a space distribution of simultaneous states representing data into a corresponding time sequence of states.

servo, servos. An adjective for use in qualifying some part or aspect of a servomechanism.

servomechanism. A feedback control system in which at least one of the system signals represents mechanical motion.

Simple Network Management Protocol. SNMP, a standard TCP/IP protocol to send alerts about conditions (such as need for operator intervention) over a TCP/IP LAN network to an SNMP monitoring station.

Slot Blocker. A slot blocker is used to restrict/close off a data cell so a data cartridge cannot be placed there. This blocker can easily be removed.

Small Computer Systems Interface (SCSI). A standard used by computer manufacturers for attaching peripheral devices (such as tape drives, hard disks, CD-ROM players, printers, and scanners) to computers (servers). Pronounced “scuzzy”. Variations of the SCSI interface provide for faster data transmission rates than standard serial and parallel ports (up to 160 megabytes per second). The variations include:

- Fast/Wide SCSI: Uses a 16-bit bus, and supports data rates of up to 20 MBps.
- SCSI-1: Uses an 8-bit bus, and supports data rates of 4 MBps.
- SCSI-2: Same as SCSI-1, but uses a 50-pin connector instead of a 25-pin connector, and supports multiple devices.
- Ultra SCSI: Uses an 8- or 16-bit bus, and supports data rates of 20 or 40 MBps.
- Ultra2 SCSI: Uses an 8- or 16-bit bus and supports data rates of 40 or 80 MBps.

- Ultra3 SCSI: Uses a 16-bit bus and supports data rates of 80 or 160 MBps.
- Ultra160 SCSI: Uses a 16-bit bus and supports data rates of 80 or 160 MBps.

SNMP. Simple Network Management Protocol, a standard TCP/IP protocol to send alerts about conditions (such as need for operator intervention) over a TCP/IP LAN network to an SNMP monitoring station.

SNS. Sense.

special feature. A feature that can be ordered to enhance the capability, storage capacity, or performance of a product, but is not essential for its basic work.

SRAM. Static random access memory.

SS. Status store.

SSL. SSL, or Secure Socket Layer is a cryptographic protocol that provide secure communications on the Internet for such things as web browsing, EKM communication, Internet faxing, instant messaging and other data transfers. This protocol allows applications to communicate across a network in a way designed to prevent eavesdropping, tampering, and message forgery.

ST. Store.

standard feature. The significant design elements of a product that are included as part of the fundamental product.

START. Start maintenance.

subsystem. A secondary or subordinate system, usually capable of operating independently of, or asynchronously with, a controlling system.

SUPP. Support.

sync. Synchronous, synchronize. Occurring with a regular or predictable time relationship.

T

tachometer, tach. A device that emits pulses that are used to measure/check speed or distance.

tape cartridge. A container holding magnetic tape that can be processed without separating it from the container.

tape void. An area in the tape in which no signal can be detected.

TCP/IP. Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol.

TCU. Tape control unit.

Telnet. See *Telnet Service Port*.

Telnet Service Port. A network protocol used by service personnel, under direction by support personnel, to access the library. TELNET clients are used, often when diagnosing problems, to manually "talk" to other services without specialized client software.

TH. Thermal.

thread/load operation. A procedure that places tape along the tape path.

TM. Tapemark.

U

UART. Universal asynchronous receiver/transmitter.

unload. Prepare the tape cartridge for removal from the drive.

utilities. Utility programs.

utility programs. A computer program in general support of the processes of a computer; for instance, a diagnostic program.

uv. Under voltage.

V

VOLSER. Volume serial number.

volume. A certain portion of data, together with its data carrier, that can be handled conveniently as a unit.

VPD. Vital product data. The information contained within the tape drive that requires nonvolatile storage used by functional areas of the drive, and information required for manufacturing, RAS, and engineering.

W

word. A character string that is convenient for some purpose to consider as an entity.

World Wide Node Name (WWNN). In a fibre channel connected library, the Drive ID as listed in the Web User Interface.

Write. Write command.

WT. world trade.

X

XR. External register.

XRA. External register address register.

Index

A

- Access PIN, Operator Control
 - Panel 4-29
- accessor 1-6
- Accessor 1-5
- accessory package 4-2
- active slots 5-20, 5-38
- Active Slots 4-18
- air quality 4-1
- air vents, front panel 1-1
- Application Managed Encryption (AME) 4-21
- ASC C-1
- ASCQ C-1
- auto clean 5-20, 5-38
- Auto Clean 4-18

B

- Bar Code Labels 6-4
 - guidelines for using 6-5
- bar code reader 1-6
- bootcode firmware, current level 5-30
- BOP 5-34
- Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) 1-8

C

- cable, host interface 4-12
- Cartridge 1-11, 6-1
 - capacity scaling 6-1
 - cleaning 6-3
 - compatibility 6-2
 - data 6-1
 - proper handling 6-6
 - specifications 6-8
 - Write-Protect Switch 6-5
- cartridge magazines 1-1, 1-5, 4-30
- Cartridge, environment 6-7
- cartridge, suspect 2-2
- cartridges
 - inserting in library 4-33
 - populating library 4-33
- Cartridges, insert and remove 5-55
- channel calibration 1-10
- choosing a location 4-1
- clean drive 5-50
- cleaning slot 5-57
- clearance 4-1
- Configure menu
 - network settings 4-15
- configuring library using Web User Interface 4-15
- configuring the library 4-14
- control keys 5-9
- control path drive 5-31, 5-43
- control path failover 3-2, 5-40
- control paths 5-22
 - multiple 3-2

- control paths (*continued*)
 - using multiple for control path failover 3-2

D

- daisy-chaining 3-8
- Data Cartridge 5-55
- data transfer rate 1-8
- DCS 5-57
- dedicated cleaning slot A-2
- default settings 5-24
- description 1-1
- desktop installation 4-1
- Device drivers supported 1-13
- DHCP 4-15, 4-24, 5-23, 5-44
- Diagnostics 5-52
- display contrast 5-29
- dll 4-29, 7-12
- Drive
 - channel calibration 1-10
 - power management 1-11
 - speed matching 1-10
- drive configuration 5-43
- Drive Density 5-34
- Drive Diagnostics 5-27, 5-52
- drive dump, saving to host 5-52
- drive firmware, current version 5-31
- drive interface 5-22
- Drive Log 5-51
- drive serial number 5-31
- drive sled
 - description 1-9
- drive status 5-34
- drive, clean 5-50

E

- EKM 4-21
- EKM Server Setting 4-21
- element addresses 3-3, A-2, A-3
- element addressing A-1
- element types A-1
- Encryption 1-6, 4-21
- environment 1-13
 - operating 1-13
 - particulates 1-13
- environmental specifications 1-11
- Error Codes 8-1
- Error LEDs 7-8
- Error log 8-1
- Ethernet Port 1-3
- Export Media 4-33, 5-17, 5-49, 5-55, 9-1

F

- factory default settings 5-24
- fan vents 1-3
- feature activation key 5-40

- features
 - optional
 - drives 1-9
- Fibre Channel 3-6
- Fibre Channel interface
 - cables and speeds 3-9
 - sharing on a SAN 3-9
 - zoning 3-9
- Fibre Channel ports 3-8
- Firmware
 - updating
 - using ITDT Tool 9-5
- firmware, upgrade 5-54
- foot pads, installing 4-3
- front panel components 1-1

G

- Gateway address 4-15
- Gateway Address 4-24, 5-23, 5-44
- glossary H-1

H

- Host Attachment 7-12
- host bus adapter 3-6
- host connection, verifying 4-29
- host interface cable 4-12
- host interface connectors 1-3
- host interfaces 3-6
- host preparation 4-29
- humidity 4-1

I

- I/O Station 1-1, 4-30, 5-55
- I/O Station, configuring 5-57
- I/O Station, open and close 5-57
- identifying a suspect cartridge 1-1, 2-2
- Import Media 4-33, 5-17, 5-49, 5-55
- installation 4-1
- Interface 7-12
- interfaces 3-6
- interfaces, supported 1-9
- internal view of library 1-5
- Internet Protocol version 4 1-8
- Internet Protocol version 6 1-8
- Inventory 5-15, 5-50
- IP address 4-15, 5-30
- IP Address 4-24, 5-23, 5-44
- IP Stack 5-23
- IPv4 1-8
- IPv6 1-8
- ITDT Tool 9-5

K

- Key Path 5-34
- Key Path Diagnostics 5-53

L

- Labels
 - bar code 6-4
 - guidelines for using 6-5
- LED, amber 7-12
- LEDs 2-2, 7-8
- LEDs, front panel 1-1
- library configuration form F-1
- Library Controller Board 1-5
- library firmware, current level 5-30
- library logs 5-51
- library mode 4-18, 5-20, 5-30, 5-38
- library name 5-38
- library network configuration 4-24, 5-44
- library recovery 7-7
- library status 5-33
- Library Verify 5-26
- library weight 1-11
- license activation key 4-21, 5-26
- Link-local IPv6 address 5-11
- locating the library 4-1
- logical libraries 4-20, 5-18, 5-40
 - determining number 3-1
 - basic guidelines 3-1
 - using multiple for sharing 3-2
- logical libraries, assigning 4-20
- logs 5-51
- low voltage differential (LVD) SCSI interface 1-9
- low-power mode 1-11
- LUN 3-6
- LUN scanning 3-6
- LVD SCSI interface 1-9

M

- MAC Address 1-8
- magazines 1-1, 1-5, 4-30
- Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) 1-8
- media 1-11
- Media 6-1
- media capacity 1-1
- menu shortcuts 5-1
- menu tree
 - Operator Control Panel 5-10
- Menus
 - Configure
 - network settings 4-15
- MIB B-1
- Monitor menu
 - Drive 5-13
 - Library 5-11
- Move Media 4-33, 5-17, 5-49
- Multiple control paths 3-2

N

- Navigation 5-9
- Netmask 4-15
- Network Address Translation (NAT) 1-8
- network configuration 5-23
- Network Mask 4-24, 5-23, 5-44
- network settings 5-23

O

- ON/OFF power button 2-4
- operation specifications 1-11
- Operator Control Panel
 - Access PIN 4-29
 - Configure: Restore Defaults 5-24
 - control keys on front panel 1-1
 - display 1-1
 - menu tree 5-10
- Monitor menu
 - Drive 5-13
 - Library 5-11
 - power ON display 2-2
- Operator Control Panel menus
 - Configure: Drive 5-22
 - Configure: Library 5-20

P

- packaging materials 4-2
- partitioning 3-3, 4-20, A-3
- partitioning your 4U library 5-40
- path failover 4-21, 5-26
- physical specifications 1-11
- power button 1-1, 2-4
- power connector 1-3
- power management 1-11
- power ON display 2-2
- power source 4-1
- power specifications 1-11
- power supply 1-5
- Power Supply Problem 7-8
- product ID 5-30
- PTF 4-29, 7-12

R

- rack installation 4-1, 4-6
- rack mounting the library 4-6
- rack requirements 4-1
- RAID controllers 3-6
- Read/Write capability 6-2
- rear panel of library 1-3
- Remove/replace procedures 10-1
- reserve slot 5-57
- RFC (Request for Comments) 1-8
- Router assigned IPv6 address 5-11

S

- Safety inspection procedure xii
- SAS interface 3-8
- screens displayed at power ON 2-2
- SCSI interface 3-6
 - bus termination 3-8
 - description 1-9
 - multiple buses 3-7
 - physical characteristics 3-7
- SCSI LVD 3-6, 3-8
- SCSI Trade Association Web site 3-8
- Sense data
 - using C-1
- sense data, library C-1
- sequential mode, starting 5-20
- sequential mode, stopping 5-20

- serial number 5-30
- serial number, drive 5-31
- Serial Port 1-3
- server attachment
 - SCSI interface 3-6
- Sharing the library 3-1
- shipment verification 4-2
- shipping container 4-2
- shipping label, removing and storing 4-4
- shipping lock and label storage
 - location 1-3
- shipping lock, removing and storing 4-4
- Simple Network Management Protocol 1-8
- sled, description of tape drive 1-9
- slot physical locations A-2
- SNMP 1-8, 4-24, 5-44, B-1
- specifications 1-11
 - environmental 1-11
 - operation 1-11
 - physical 1-11
 - power 1-11
- Specifications
 - cartridges 6-8
- speed matching 1-10
- SSL 4-24, 5-44
- storage capacity 1-8

T

- tape cartridge 1-11
- tape drive sled 1-3, 1-5
- Tape drives
 - channel calibration 1-10
 - power management 1-11
 - quantity in library 1-9
 - speed matching 1-10
- TapeAlert Flags
 - for drives B-3
- TapeAlert Flags, library B-1
- Telnet Service Port 5-29
- troubleshooting 7-2

U

- Ultra160 1-8
- Ultra320 1-8
- Ultrium Tape Drives 1-9
- unpacking the library 4-2
- Updating firmware
 - using ITDT Tool 9-5
- upgrade firmware 5-54
- USB port 1-3

V

- verifying the shipment 4-2
- View Drive Logs 5-51

W

- Web User Interface
 - Configure Library: Event Notification 5-48

- Web User Interface *(continued)*
 - Configure Library: Restore
 - Defaults 5-49
 - configuring library 4-15
 - date and time 4-26
 - drive information 4-23
 - event notification 4-27
 - general library information 4-18
 - logging on 4-17
 - logs and traces 4-27
 - user access information 4-26
- Web User Interface menus
 - Configure Library: User Access 5-46
- worldwide node name 5-30
- WORM (Write Once, Read Many) 6-2
- Write Once, Read Many (see WORM) 6-2
- write-protect switch
 - Write Protect Switch Setting B-3
- Write-Protect Switch
 - setting 6-5
- WWNN 5-30

Printed in USA